

<sup>NTT</sup>  
**docomo**

**F-06E**

*ARROWS* NX

**INSTRUCTION MANUAL '13.6**

## Introduction

Thank you for purchasing "F-06E" mobile terminal.  
Before using your terminal, or when necessary, read this manual to ensure safe use and handling.

### Learning operations

#### "Quick start guide" (in Japanese only)

This manual provides information about screens and operations of basic functions.

#### "Instruction Manual" application (e-manual) (installed in the terminal) (in Japanese only)

This manual provides information and operations of all the functions.

**<Operation steps>** From the Home screen,  → [Instruction Manual] → Select a search method

If you delete "Instruction Manual", you can access Google Play from Play Store to install again.

**<Operation steps>** From the Home screen,  → [Play Store] → Search "取扱説明書 (Instruction Manual)" and select "取扱説明書 (Instruction Manual)" → [INSTALL]

#### "INSTRUCTION MANUAL" (PDF file)

This manual provides information and operations of all the functions.

**<From PC>** <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/manual/download/index.html>

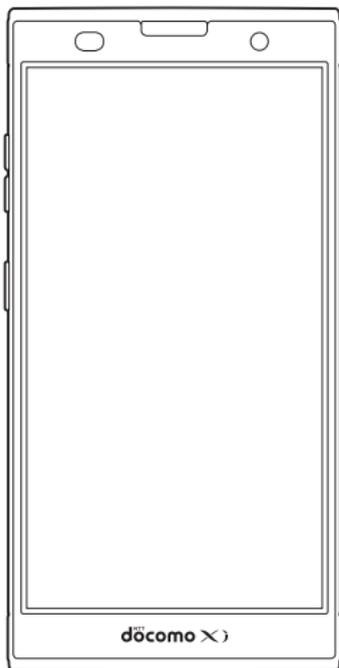
\*You can download the latest information.

### Viewing this manual

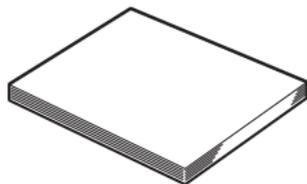
- In this manual, "F-06E" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "the terminal".
- The images or illustration used in this manual are examples. They may differ from the actual displays.
- In this manual, explanations and screen images for terminal color "White", "docomo Palette UI" as Home application and "GREEN-BLUE" as Kisekae are provided.
- In this manual, "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering security code or performing fingerprint authentication depending on functions.
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents in this manual, URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

## Basic package

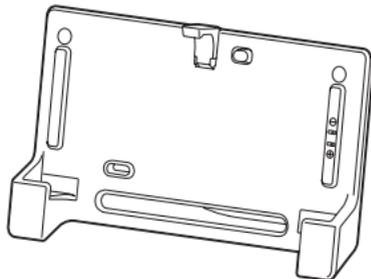
### ■ F-06E (including warranty)



### ■ Quick start guide (Japanese)



### ■ Desktop Holder F40



Other options → P170

# Contents

■ Basic package .....	1
■ Before using the terminal .....	4
■ Precautions (Always follow these directions) .....	5
■ Handling precautions .....	14
■ Waterproofness/Dustproofness .....	20

## Before using the terminal ..... 25

Part names and functions .....	25
docomo mini UIM card .....	26
Charging .....	28
Turning power ON/OFF .....	31
Basic operation .....	31
Character entry .....	34
Initial settings.....	39
Indicator LED .....	40
Screen/Icon .....	41
Task manager .....	46
Switching the home applications.....	46

## docomo Palette UI ..... 47

Home screen .....	47
Application list .....	49

## Calling ..... 53

Making a call .....	53
Receiving a call .....	55
Operation during a call .....	55
Recent calls .....	56

Phone memo .....	57
Call settings .....	57
Phonebook.....	59

## Mail/Browser ..... 63

sp-mode mail .....	63
SMS.....	63
Email .....	65
Gmail.....	68
Early warning "Area Mail" .....	68
Google Talk .....	69
Browser.....	69

## Applications ..... 74

dmenu .....	74
dmarket.....	74
Play Store .....	74
Osafu-Keitai .....	76
Mobacas .....	80
TV (Full Seg/1Seg) .....	85
Camera.....	93
Gallery.....	99
Media Player.....	100
YouTube .....	101
GPS/Navigation.....	102
Calendar.....	105
AlarmClock .....	106
Calculator.....	107
Electronic dictionary .....	107
Search .....	108

ドコモバックアップ (SD card backup)	108
<b>Settings</b>	<b>110</b>
Setting menu	110
WIRELESS & NETWORKS	114
Sound & Vibration settings	122
Display	125
Illumination	128
Multimedia	128
Storage	129
Battery	129
NX! eco	130
Apps	130
docomo service	131
Lock/Security	132
My physical profile	144
Slide-in function	145
Language & input	146
Adding an account	147
Date & time	147
Accessibility	148
About phone	148
<b>File management</b>	<b>149</b>
Storage (Internal storage)	149
microSD card (External storage)	149
File operations	151
<b>Data communication</b>	<b>152</b>
Infrared communication	152
Bluetooth® communication	154
NFC communication	157

## **External device connection**..... 158

Connecting with a PC	158
Connecting with a Wi-Fi printer	159
Connecting with DLNA device	159
Connecting with other devices	162

## **International roaming** ..... 164

Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)	164
Available service overseas	164
Before using the terminal overseas	164
Settings for overseas use	166
Making/Receiving a call in the country you stay	167
Setting international roaming	168
After returning to Japan	169

## **Appendix/Index** ..... 170

Options and related devices	170
Troubleshooting (FAQ)	170
Smartphone Anshin Remote Support	177
Resetting the terminal	178
Warranty and After-Sales Service	178
Software update	180
Upgrade Android software	184
Main specifications	186
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones	188
Export Administration Regulations	192
Intellectual Property Right	192
SIM unlock	197
Index	198

## Before using the terminal

- This terminal supports LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS, Wireless LAN System.
- Because your terminal uses wireless transmission, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio waves are weak, or out of Xi and FOMA service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when there are strong radio waves with 4 signal status icons on the terminal and you are not moving (traveling).
- Because your terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS automatically applies a confidential communication function to all calls, so even if a third party could somehow tap a call, they only hear noise.
- Your terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in the terminal. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of the terminal.
- In the terminal, as it is for a PC, some applications that you install may give instability of the operation, or may send your location information or personal information registered to the terminal to outside via the Internet and the information may be used improperly. Please thoroughly check a provider and operation status of the application etc. which you want to use beforehand and then use it.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card or a PC.
- This terminal supports Xi Area, FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- The terminal does not support i-mode sites (programs) or i- $\alpha$ pli.
- You can use the terminal only with docomo mini UIM card. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace.
- Even in Manner mode, shutter sound, auto focus lock sound, count down sound for self timer, and Find Me Ringtone sound for Bluetooth Low Energy setting are emitted.
- You can check your own phone number in the following step.  
From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook] → [My profile]
- The terminal automatically performs communication for some functions, for example, to synchronize data, check the latest software or maintain connection with the server. If you transmit a large amount of data such as downloading applications or watching video, a packet communication charge becomes high. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- Depending on the applications or service you use, packet communication charge may be applied even in Wi-Fi communication.

- The software on the terminal can be updated with the latest information.→P180
- Improving the terminals quality or upgrading operation system may be included in the software update. And some applications used in the previous version may not be available or some unintended bugs may occur after software update.
- Display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in the terminals.
- When the memory of the microSD card or the terminal is almost full, running applications may not operate normally. In this case, delete saved data.
- Google applications and service contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- For the information on the services provided by Google, refer to the terms of use for Google Inc. And for the details on other web services, read terms of use for each service.
- If your terminal is lost, change your each account password using a PC to prevent other persons from using Google services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc. and Twitter.
- Set the screen lock to ensure the security of your terminal for its loss.→P135
- The terminal supports only sp-mode, mopera U and Business mopera Internet. Other providers are not supported.
- To use tethering, a subscription to sp-mode is required.
- Packet communication charge when using tethering varies depending on the charging plan you use. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- As Mobacas is a service using communications, using the service incurs packet communication charge. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is recommended.
- For details on usage fee, refer to <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/>.

## Precautions (Always follow these directions)

- Before using your terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines.



This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.



This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.



This sign denotes that minor injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

- The symbols below show specific directions.

 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
 No liquids	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
 No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
 Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
 Unplug	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

## ■ Precautions contain the description below.

Handling the terminal, adapter, desktop holder and docomo mini UIM card (common).....	6
Handling the terminal.....	8
Handling adapter and desktop holder .....	11
Handling docomo mini UIM card .....	12
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment .....	12
Material list.....	13

## ◆ Handling the terminal, adapter, desktop holder and docomo mini UIM card (common)

### DANGER



Don't

**Do not use, store or leave the terminal in hot places (e.g. by the fire, near a heater, under a kotatsu, in direct sunlight, in a car in the hot sun).**  
May cause fire, burns or injuries.



Don't

**Do not put the terminal into heating cooking device such as microwave oven or high-pressure container.**  
May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



No disassembly

**Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment.**  
May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



No liquids

**Do not let the terminal get wet with water, drinking water, urine of pet animals, etc.**

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.  
For waterproofness, refer to the page. → P20  
"Waterproofness/Dustproofness"



Do

**Use the adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO for your terminal.**

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



## WARNING



Don't

**Do not throw the equipment or give a strong force or hard shock to it.**

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Don't

**Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging terminal, external connection jack, or stereo earphone jack. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.**

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Don't

**Do not cover or wrap the terminal with a blanket etc. while using or charging.**

May cause fire or burns.



Do

**Turn the terminal OFF and stop charging before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated.**

The gas may catch fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it.

(When NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)



Do

**If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations.**

- Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
- Turn the terminal OFF.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



## CAUTION



Don't

**Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.**

The equipment may fall and cause injuries.



Don't

**Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

**Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.**

May cause injuries.



Do

**Store the equipment out of reach of infant.**

May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.



**Be careful especially when using the terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.**

If you use applications, call or watch TV while charging the battery for a long time, the terminal and adapter may be heated.

Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

### ◆ Handling the terminal

■ The internal battery for the terminal is as follows.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

### DANGER



**Do not throw the terminal into the fire.**

May cause internal battery to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



**Do not nail the terminal, hit with a hammer or step on it.**

May cause internal battery to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



**If the internal battery fluid etc. contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.**

May cause loss of sight.

### WARNING



**Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.**

May cause harmful effect on eyes.



**Do not direct the infrared data port toward home electric appliances etc. equipped with infrared device when using infrared communication.**

May cause an accident because of malfunction of infrared device.



**Do not turn on the light by getting the lighting part closer to other person's eyes. When shooting infants, keep at least 1 m away from the object.**

May impair eyesight. And may cause accidents like injury etc., by dazzling or astounding other people.



**Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into docomo mini UIM card slot or microSD card slot.**

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



**Do not turn on the light aiming directly at the driver of the car etc.**

May disturb driving and cause an accident.



Do

**Turn the terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.**

May cause electronic equipment or electronic medical equipment to fail or malfunction.

When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility.

If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you will be punished according to law.

If usage of the terminal in an aircraft is admitted by setting airplane mode, etc., use the terminal under the direction of the airline.



Do

**When you talk by setting handsfree or ring alert is sounding, keep the terminal away from your ear.**

**And, when connecting the earphone/microphone etc. to the terminal and play a game or music, adjust the volume moderately.**

Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss.

And, if you cannot hear the sound around you clearly, it may cause an accident.



Do

**If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the incoming vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.**

May cause harmful effect on heart.



Do

**When you use electronic medical equipment, check with the equipment manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by radio waves before using.**

May cause harmful effect on electronic medical equipment etc.



Do

**Turn the terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.**

May cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

\* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control equipment.

Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.



Do

**When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of fragments of broken glass or exposed internal parts of the terminal.**

Surface of display is made of hardened glass and camera lens is made of plastic panel so as not to be shattered, however, if you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may be injured.



Do

**If the internal battery leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove the terminal from the vicinity of open flames.**

The vapors from leaking battery fluid may ignite, fire or explode.

## CAUTION



**Do not swing the terminal by the antenna, strap, etc.**

Don't May cause accident such as injury to yourself or others by hitting.



**Do not use the damaged terminal.**

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.

Don't



**When using the motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold the terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.**

Don't May cause accident such as injuries.



**If the display part is accidentally broken and the liquid crystal leaks out, do not make the substance contact with your skin of face or hands.**

Don't May cause loss of sight or skin problems.  
If the liquid crystal gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse it with clean water and see a doctor immediately.  
And, if the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol etc. to wipe it off, then wash with soap.



**Do not discard the old terminal together with other garbage.**

Don't May cause malfunction or damage. Bring the old terminal into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.



Do

**To use the terminal in car, check with automobile manufacturer or dealer to determine how the device is affected by radio waves before using.**

In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction. In that case, stop using the terminal immediately.



Do

**The use of the terminal may cause itching, rashes, eczema, or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor.**

For material of each part →P13 "Material list"



Do

**When watching the display, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.**

May reduce visual acuity.



Do

**If fluid etc. leaks out from the internal battery, do not make the fluid contact with your skin of face or hands.**

May cause loss of sight or skin problems.  
If the fluid etc. put into your eyes or mouth, or contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area with clean water.  
If the fluid etc. put into the eyes or mouth, immediately see a doctor after flushing.

## ◆ Handling adapter and desktop holder

### WARNING



Don't

**Do not use the adapter cord if it gets damaged.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Don't

**Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Don't

**Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Don't

**When it starts to thunder, do not touch adapter.**

May cause electric shock.



Don't

**Do not short the charging terminal while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging terminal with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Don't

**Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Don't

**When you insert and remove the AC adapter from power outlet, do not contact a metal strap or other metal objects with the jack.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



No wet hands

**Do not touch the adapter cord, desktop holder or outlet with wet hands.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

**Only use with the specified power source and voltage. When charging the terminal overseas, use AC adapter for global use.**

If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

AC adapter : 100V AC

DC adapter : 12V or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC  
(Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use)



Do

**If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.



Do

**Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

**When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, firmly connect to the outlet.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

**When you disconnect the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the adapter to disconnect.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Unplug

**Always remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter when not using the adapter for an extended period.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Unplug

**Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Unplug

**Always remove the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the equipment.**

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

### ◆ Handling docomo mini UIM card

#### CAUTION



Do

**Be careful of the cut surface when removing docomo mini UIM card.**

May cause injuries.

### ◆ Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

#### WARNING



Do

**Wearers of medical equipment such as implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use the terminal at least 15 cm away from the implanted device.**

The terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



Do

**When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.**

The terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



Do

**When you are in a crowd etc. and you have difficulties to keep a distance of 15 cm or more from others, turn the airplane mode on or power off the terminal not to transmit signals.**

There may be wearers of medical equipment such as implanted pacemakers or defibrillators around you. The terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



Do

**When using the terminal in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility.**

## ◆ Material list

Part	Material/Surface treatment	
Display panel	Hardened glass/AF coating	
Exterior case	Front case, rear case	PC resin/Acrylic UV curable coating
	Lateral side	Aluminum alloy
	Corner	PC+ABS resin/Discontinuity evaporated+Acrylic UV curable coating
TV/FM transmitter antenna	Top section	PC+ABS resin/Acrylic UV curable coating
	Pipe section	Stainless steel
	Root flexure section	Nickel titanium alloy
	Root rotating section	Stainless steel/Nickel plating
Receiver panel	Stainless steel/Enamel plating	
Out-camera panel, Light lens	Acrylic resin	
Power key, Volume key	Aluminum alloy	
Jack cap, Slot cap	PC resin+Polyester elastomer resin	
Stereo earphone jack	PA resin	

Part	Material/Surface treatment	
Fingerprint sensor	Sensor	Epoxy resin
	Outer periphery	Stainless steel/Titanium coating
Infrared data port	PC resin/Acrylic UV curable coating (terminal color : Black), multi-layer coating+Acrylic UV curable coating (terminal color : White)	
Charging terminal	Stainless steel/Gold plating	
Desktop Holder F40	Exterior case, Speaker duct	ABS resin
	Lever	POM resin
	Lock	PA resin
	Stop	TPE resin
	Screw	Iron/Trivalent chromate
	Blind sheet	PC resin
	Label	PS resin
	Rubber part	Polyurethane
	Contact spring (pin)	Copper/Gold plating
	External connection jack	Stainless steel/Tin plating

## Handling precautions

### ◆ General

- **F-06E is waterproof/dustproof, however, do not allow water or dust to seep into the terminal and do not allow accessories or optional devices to get wet or attached with dust.**
  - Adapter, desktop holder, docomo mini UIM card are not waterproof/dustproof. Do not use in a bathroom or other highly humid area or do not let rain touch. Or putting the terminal on your body, humidity of sweat may cause internal corrosion and malfunction. Note that malfunctions, which are determined to be caused by water as result of inspections, are not covered by the warranty. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.
- **Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
  - Rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth may scratch the display.
  - Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains.
  - If the terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- **Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab etc.**
  - If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. Also, be careful never to damage the jack when cleaning it.

- **Do not place the terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.**
  - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.
- **When using, be careful not to subject excessive force to the terminal.**
  - If the terminal is crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, display or internal PCBs may be damaged or malfunction. And, if external devices are plugged into the external connection jack or the stereo earphone jack, the breakage of the connector or malfunction may result.
- **Do not rub or scrape the display with a metal piece etc.**
  - May scratch the display, causing malfunction or damage.
- **Carefully read the separate instructions that come with optional devices.**

### ◆ The terminal

- **Do not press the surface of the touch panel strongly or operate it with sharp objects such as a nail, a ballpoint pen and a pin.**
  - It may damage the touch panel.
- **Avoid extreme temperature.**
  - Use the terminal where the temperature ranges between 5 and 40°C (limited to the temporary use in a bathroom etc. when temperature is above 36°C) and humidity ranges between 45 and 85%.
- **The terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.**

- **Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in the terminal.**
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- **Do not drop the terminal or subject it to shocks.**
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not plug external devices into the external connection jack or stereo earphone jack at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.**
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- **It is normal for the terminal to become warm during use or charging. Continue to use it.**
- **Do not leave the terminal with the camera in areas under strong direct sunlight.**
  - May cause discoloring or burn-in of elements.
- **Use the terminal with the jack cap and slot cap closed.**
  - Dust and/or water brought into the terminal cause malfunction.
- **Do not give a strong impact on the fingerprint sensor or scratch the surface.**
  - It may cause not only malfunction of the fingerprint sensor but also disabling authentication.
- **Clean the fingerprint sensor with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
  - When the fingerprint sensor is dirty or gets wet on the surface, it cannot read the fingerprint and may cause decrease the authentication performance or erroneous operation.
- **While microSD card is being used, do not take the card out or do not turn off the terminal.**
  - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not bring magnetic cards etc. close to the terminal.**
  - Magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- **Do not bring magnetized objects close to the terminal.**
  - Bringing strong magnetism close may cause a malfunction.
- **The internal battery is a consumable part.**
  - Replace the internal battery if the terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. For details of replacement of the internal battery, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.
- **Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35°C).**
- **The operation time provided by the internal battery varies by the operating environment and internal battery deterioration.**
- **Be careful especially about the followings when storing the terminal.**
  - Storing under the state of the full charge (right after charging ends)
  - Storing under the state of the empty charge (too exhausted to turn on the terminal)

They may cause the internal battery performance to be degraded or its lifetime to be shortened.

A recommended battery level to store the terminal is approximately 40% of remaining battery level as a guide.

## ◆ Adapter

---

- **Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery in the areas below.**
  - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
  - Near land-line phones or TVs/radios
- **It is normal for the adapter to become hot while charging. Continue to use it.**
- **When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.**
  - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- **When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.**
- **Do not give strong shock. Do not deform the charging terminal.**
  - May cause malfunction.

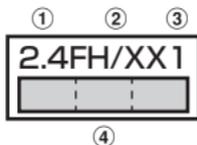
## ◆ docomo mini UIM card

---

- **Do not use excessive force to install/remove docomo mini UIM card.**
- **Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using docomo mini UIM card with another IC card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep UIM ICs clean.**
- **Clean docomo mini UIM card with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
- **Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in docomo mini UIM card.**
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- **To preserve the environment, bring the old docomo mini UIM card to a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.**
- **Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.**
  - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop docomo mini UIM card or subject it to shocks.**
  - May cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend docomo mini UIM card or place heavy objects on it.**
  - May cause malfunction.
- **Do not install docomo mini UIM card into the terminal with a label or sticker put on.**
  - May cause malfunction.

## ◆ Bluetooth devices

- This terminal is equipped with the security features, that are compliant with Bluetooth standards for communication via Bluetooth. However, depending on the settings, there may not be enough security. Be aware of security risks when using Bluetooth.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any information which may be leaked during communication via Bluetooth.
- Frequency bands  
Frequency bands used by the terminal Bluetooth function are as below.



- ① 2.4 : Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz band.
- ② FH/XX : The modulation is the FH-SS method or other method (method other than DS-SS method/DS-FH method/FH-OFDM composite method/OFDM method).
- ③ 1 : The expected interference distance is 10 m or shorter.
- ④  : All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile object identification devices cannot be avoided.

Available channels vary by countries.

Use of Bluetooth is limited in some countries. Confirm regulations of the country/region to use it.

To use in airplane, confirm with airline company in advance.

### Cautions on using Bluetooth devices

In the bandwidth used by this terminal, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations used to identify mobile objects used in production lines of a factory that require a license, specified low power radio stations, or amateur radio stations that do not require a license (hereafter "other radio stations") can be in operation.

1. Before using the terminal, check whether "other radio stations" are in operation in your neighborhood.
2. If radio wave interference occurs between the terminal and "other radio stations", use the terminal in a different location or "Turn the power OFF" to avoid the radio wave interference.
3. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

## ◆ Wireless LAN (WLAN)

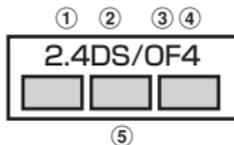
- **Wireless LAN (WLAN) exchanges information using radio waves, and allows you to freely establish LAN connection if you are within an area where radio wave reaches. On the other side, if you communicate without appropriate security settings, communications may be intercepted or hacked by malicious parties. It is recommended to make necessary security settings on your judgement and responsibility.**

### • Wireless LAN

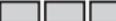
Do not use wireless LAN in a place where magnetized by electric products, AV, OA equipment, etc. or where electromagnetic wave is generated.

- If magnetism or electrostatic noise affects the terminal, noise may be increased or communication may not be available (especially when using microwave oven, it may affect the terminal).
  - Using near TV or radio may cause poor reception or TV screen may be blurred.
  - When multiple wireless LAN access points exist near the terminal and they use the same channel, search may not be performed correctly.
- **Frequency bands**

Frequency bands used by the terminal wireless LAN function are as below.



- ① 2.4 : Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz band.

- ② DS : The modulation is the DS-SS method.  
③ OF : The modulation is the OFDM method.  
④ 4 : The expected interference distance is 40 m or shorter.  
⑤  : All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile object identification devices can be avoided.

Using wireless LAN built-into the terminal in 5.2/5.3 GHz outside is prohibited by the Radio Law.

Available channels vary by countries. To use WLAN overseas, check the conditions such as available frequency, regulation, etc. for the country.

To use in airplane, confirm with airline company in advance. When docomo mini UIM card is not inserted or when you are out of service area, channels 12, 13 of 2.4 GHz band and 5 GHz band are not available regardless of whether you are in Japan or abroad.

### Cautions on using 2.4 GHz devices

In the frequency band used by WLAN devices, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects used in production lines of a factory (a license is required), specified low power radio stations (a license is not required), or amateur radio stations (a license is required) can be in operation.

1. Before using this device, confirm that in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects, specified low power radio stations or amateur radio stations are not in operation in your neighborhood.

2. If this device generates harmful radio wave interference against in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects, change the using frequency promptly or stop using wireless LAN function, and contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual, then consult about treatment for prevention of the interference (for example, installation of partitions etc.).
3. If this device generates harmful radio wave interference against in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects or amateur radio stations, or if any trouble, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

#### Cautions on using 5 GHz devices

Channel numbers and frequency bands available in Japan are as follows.

- 5.2 GHz band : 5,180 to 5,240 MHz (36, 38, 40, 42\*, 44, 46, 48 Ch)
- 5.3 GHz band : 5,260 to 5,320 MHz (52, 54, 56, 58\*, 60, 62, 64 Ch)
- 5.6 GHz band : 5,500 to 5,700 MHz (100, 102, 104, 106\*, 108, 110, 112, 116, 118, 120, 122\*, 124, 126, 128, 132, 134, 136, 140 Ch)

\* It is compatible with draft IEEE802.11ac version. The terminal may not be able to communicate with official-version-compatible devices or draft-version-compatible devices from other companies. For information on compatible merchandise, visit the following website.

<http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/wifi/> (In Japanese only)

---

#### ◆ FeliCa reader/writer

- FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep the terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

---

#### ◆ FM transmitter

- FM transmitter function of the terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 78.4 - 89.6MHz frequency band. To use it, set frequency not to common to FM radio station of the area you use so as to avoid affecting FM radio users in neighborhood.

## ◆ CAUTION

- **Do not use a remodeled terminal. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law/Telecommunications Business Act.**

The terminal is certified according to technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment based on the Radio Law/Telecommunications Business Act, and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark" is depicted on the electronic nameplate of the terminal. You can check the electronic nameplate in the terminal as follows.

From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [About phone] → [Auth]

If you remodel the terminal by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid.

Do not use the terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law/Telecommunications Business Act.

- **Be careful when you use the terminal while driving a car etc.**  
Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to penal regulations.  
However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.
- **Use FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**  
FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards.  
If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.
- **Use the FM transmitter only in Japan.**  
The FM transmitter of the terminal is compliant with wireless standards and is authorized for use only in Japan.  
If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.
- **Do not alter the basic software.**  
Repairs may be refused as a modification of software.

## Waterproofness/Dustproofness

**F-06E provides waterproofness of IPX5\*1, IPX8\*2 and dustproofness of IP5X\*3 with firmly closing the jack and slot cap.**

- \*1 IPX5 means that a phone keeps functioning after applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min. from every direction from a distance of approximately 3 m for at least 3 minutes using water nozzle in 6.3 mm inner diameter.
- \*2 For F-06E, IPX8 means that a phone keeps functioning after F-06E is slowly submerged to depth of 1.5 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out. (Camera function cannot be used under water.)
- \*3 IP5X means a protection degree that a phone keeps functioning and safety after it is placed in a device with dust in diameter 75 μm or less for 8 hours, agitated and then taken out.

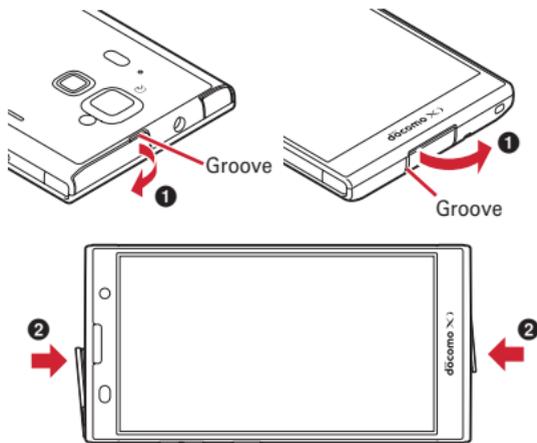
## ◆ What you can do with waterproofness of F-06E

- **You can talk and watch TV without an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).**
  - When your hands or the terminal are wet, avoid opening/closing the jack cap or slot cap.
- **The terminal can be washed with tap water at room temperature.**
  - With pressing and holding the jack cap and slot cap not to open, wash the terminal with tap water without rubbing hard.
  - Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (→P20).
  - Do not use brush, sponge, soap, detergent, etc.

## ◆ To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness

To avoid water/dust ingress, be sure to observe the followings.

- When attaching/removing docomo mini UIM card or using external connection jack, pull the cap with your fingertip by the groove to open (1). Then push the tab down and ensure that there are no gaps between the cap and the terminal (2).



- Close the jack cap and slot cap firmly. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to enter.
- Do not poke the stereo earphone jack, microphone, earpiece, speaker, temperature/humidity sensor or air vent with a sharp object.
- Do not let the terminal fall. It may be scratched causing the waterproof/dustproof performance to degrade.

- If mud or soil is adhered to the terminal, eliminate the dirt first by shaking several times in tap water or wash-basin and then wash the terminal with running water.
- Drain water in the specified steps (→P23) after washing.
- You can use the terminal in a bathroom.**
  - Do not immerse the terminal into a bathtub. Also, do not use the terminal in hot water. May cause malfunction. If you should fall the terminal into the bathtub, immediately pick it up to drain water in specified procedure (→P23).
  - Never put the terminal in hot spring water or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder. In case the terminal gets wet with water other than tap water, wash it in the procedure above.
  - You can use the terminal within 2 hours in a bathroom where the temperature ranges between 5 and 45°C and humidity ranges between 45 and 99%.
  - Rapid temperature change may cause condensation. If you bring the terminal from a cold place to warm place such as a bathroom, wait until the terminal reaches the room temperature.
  - Do not put hot water from a faucet or shower.

- The rubber gaskets of the jack cap and slot cap play important roles for keeping waterproof/dustproof performance. Do not remove or scratch the rubber gaskets. Also, prevent dust from adhering to them.

To keep the terminal waterproofness/dustproofness, replacement of parts is recommended every 2 years regardless of whether the terminal appears normal or abnormal. DOCOMO takes the terminal to replace the parts as a chargeable service. Bring the terminal to a sales outlet such as a DOCOMO-specified repair office.

## ◆ Important precautions

Do not perform actions shown in the illustrations below.

<Example>



Using Soap/  
Detergent/Bath powder



Washing with  
brush/sponge



Machine-washing



Applying strong  
water flow



Soaking in  
ocean water



Using in  
hot spring

**Observe the following precautions to use the terminal properly.**

- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof. When watching TV, etc. with the terminal installed in the included desktop holder, do not use it in a bathroom, shower room, kitchen or lavatory even if it is not connected to the AC adapter.
- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (→P20). Even if the F-06E is waterproof in IPX5 waterproof, water may enter inside from a damaged section and cause troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the battery.
- If the terminal gets wet with salt water, sea water, refreshing beverage, etc. or mud or soil adhered, wash it immediately. If they dry out, it is hard to remove the dirt and it may cause damage or malfunction.
- Do not put the terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Do not move the terminal in water or slam the terminal against the surface of water.
- When you use the terminal in swimming pool, obey rules of the facility.
- The terminal does not float on water.
- Do not leave water on the terminal. May short-circuit the power jacks, or in a cold region, water may freeze causing malfunction.
- Do not leave water on the stereo earphone jack, microphone, earpiece or speaker. Such water may interfere with talking.
- Do not leave water drop attached around the temperature/humidity sensor. May cause incorrect measurement of temperature/humidity.

- If the terminal gets wet with water or other liquids with the jack cap or slot cap open, the liquid may get inside the terminal causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using the terminal, turn the power OFF and contact a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- If the rubber gasket of jack cap or slot cap is damaged or deformed, replace it at DOCOMO-specified repair office.

DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

### ◆ Draining water

When the terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water in the following steps.

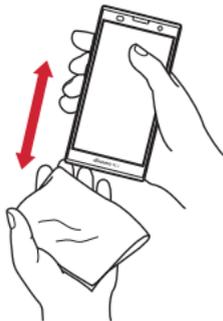
- ① Hold the terminal firmly and wipe off moisture on the terminal surface and back side with dry, clean cloth etc.



- ② Shake the terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding it, until there is no more water splattering.



- ③ Swing the terminal about 10 times against a dry, clean cloth etc. to wipe off water remaining in the stereo earphone jack, microphone, earpiece, speaker, keypad, TV/FM transmitter antenna or charging terminals, air vent, etc.



- ④ Wipe off water drained from the terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.
  - Water, if any, remaining in the terminal may ooze up after wiping off.
  - Do not wipe off water remaining in gaps directly with a cotton swab etc.

## ◆ Charging

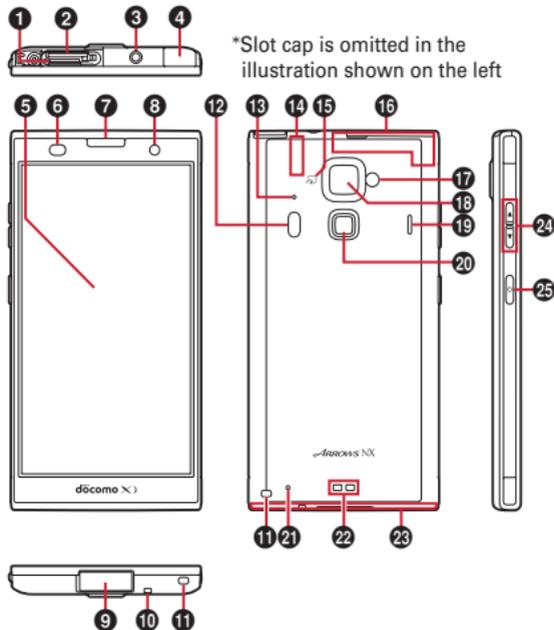
---

### **Check the following during and after charging.**

- Never try to charge the battery when the terminal is wet.
- When charging the battery after the terminal gets wet, adequately drain water and wipe off water with a dry, clean cloth etc., before inserting to the accessory desktop holder or opening the jack cap.
- When you open the jack cap for charging, close the cap firmly after charging. It is recommended to use the desktop holder for charging to prevent water or dust from seeping inside from the external connection jack.
- Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, shower room, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. May cause fire or electric shock.
- Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. May cause electric shock.

# Before using the terminal

## Part names and functions



- 1 microSD card slot
- 2 docomo mini UIM card slot
- 3 Stereo earphone jack (waterproof)  
When you insert the plug of the stereo earphones, the earphone connecting MIC selection screen appears.
- 4 TV/FM transmitter antenna  
Extend when watching TV/Mobacas/using FM transmitter.
- 5 Display (Touch panel)
- 6 Proximity sensor/RGB sensor  
Proximity sensor prevents erroneous operation of the touch panel during a call. RGB sensor senses ambient light and brightness and automatically adjusts the display backlight.  
Putting a protective sheet or sticker on the sensor or covering the sensor with fingers may cause erroneous operation or incorrect sensing result.
- 7 Earpiece/Indicator LED (Illumination)
- 8 In-camera
- 9 External connection jack (MHL available)
- 10 Microphone
- 11 Strap hole
- 12 Infrared data port
- 13 Temperature/Humidity sensor  
If you cover the sensor, detection may not be done correctly.  
Download "Temp Humid Checker application" from manufacturer's website to use.
- 14 Bluetooth/Wi-Fi antenna section\*
- 15 mark
- 16 GPS/Xi antenna section\*
- 17 Flash
- 18 Out-camera
- 19 Speaker

#### 20 Fingerprint sensor

Authenticate with fingerprint, cancel the screen lock, or set/cancel sleep mode.

#### 21 Air vent

#### 22 Charging terminal

#### 23 Xi/FOMA antenna\*

#### 24 Volume key

Adjust sound volume, or set/cancel Manner mode by pressing and holding  for 1 second or more.

#### 25 Power key

Turn ON/OFF, or set/cancel sleep mode, public mode, Airplane mode or Manner mode.

\* It is built-in the terminal. Covering around the antenna by the hand may affect the quality.

## docomo mini UIM card

The docomo mini UIM card is an IC card in which user information such as your phone number etc. is saved.

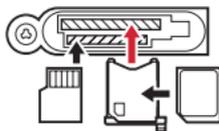
- You can use the terminal only with docomo mini UIM card. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace.
- If docomo mini UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, some functions such as making/receiving calls and sending/receiving SMS are not available.
- For details on docomo mini UIM card, refer to the docomo mini UIM card manual.

## ◆ Installing/Removing docomo mini UIM card

- Install/remove after turning OFF the power.
- For inserting docomo mini UIM card, make sure to use the tray. Inserting docomo mini UIM card without tray may cause malfunction.

### ■ Installing

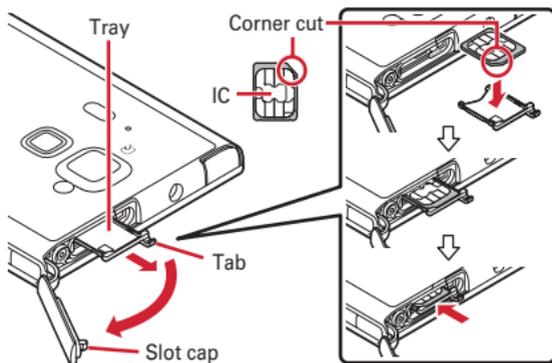
- Open the slot cap with the back side of the terminal facing up → P21**
  - When the slot cap is opened, there is docomo mini UIM card slot toward the back cover of the terminal and there is the microSD card slot toward the display.



microSD card      docomo mini UIM card

- Put your fingertip on the tab of the tray and pull it straight out**
  - Tray is designed to be removed from the docomo mini UIM card slot.
- Place the docomo mini UIM card with IC side facing up**
  - Check the orientation of docomo mini UIM card corner cut.

- ④ Check that the back side of the terminal is facing up, then insert the tray straight into the docomo mini UIM card slot



- ⑤ Close the slot cap of the terminal → P21

### ■ Removing

- ① Open the slot cap with back side of the terminal facing up, put your fingertip on the tab of the tray, then pull it out straight to remove the docomo mini UIM card.
- ② Close the slot cap of the terminal → P21

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When handling docomo mini UIM card, take care not to touch or scratch the metal part. Note that inserting docomo mini UIM card forcibly into the terminal may damage docomo mini UIM card.
- For removing/inserting the tray from/into the docomo mini UIM card slot, do not remove or insert forcibly. Doing so may damage the tray.

- IMEI plate with IMEI number and bar code printed is inserted between microSD card slot and docomo mini UIM card slot. Do not pull out the IMEI plate because it will be requested at a DOCOMO-specified repair office when the terminal is damaged etc. Please note the followings.
  - If you pull out the IMEI plate accidentally, insert it.
  - Do not pull out the IMEI plate forcibly because it may cause damage.
  - If you lost the IMEI plate, repairs may be refused.

### ◆ Security code for docomo mini UIM card

Security code called as PIN code can be set in the docomo mini UIM card. The code is set to "0000" at the time of subscription, but you can change the number by yourself. → P134

## Charging

### ❖ Precautions on charging

- If you use applications while charging, it may take time to complete charging or charging may not complete due to drop-off of battery. It is not abnormality of the terminal.
- It is normal for the terminal or AC adapter to become warm while charging. When the terminal becomes warm, charging may stop temporarily for the safety. When the terminal becomes extremely hot, stop using immediately.
- The following conditions will lead to a charging error and the indicator LED turns off. Charging restarts when the charging becomes possible.
  - When the power voltage of the charger becomes out of chargeable range
  - When temperature of the internal battery or the terminal\* becomes out of chargeable range
- \* When the temperature rises high, wait until the temperature is dropped and then retry charging.
- If charging takes for very long time, a charging error is notified and the indicator LED turns off. Remove the terminal from the charger and retry.
- When power voltage of the internal battery is abnormal, charging error occurs and the indicator LED flashes. Remove the terminal from the charger, turn off the power, and then contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- When charging starts with the battery empty, the terminal may not be immediately activated after turning the power ON. In this case, charge the terminal while keeping it turned OFF, and turn it ON after a while.

- For charging time, see "Main specifications"→P186

### ❖ Internal battery life

- The internal battery is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces. Talking on the phone for a long time while charging may reduce the internal battery lifetime.
- You can check performance (charging ability) of the internal battery from About phone.→P148
- When a time available with each charging is reduced to about a half from that of a new battery, replacement of the internal battery is recommended because it is near the end of life. For replacement of internal battery, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.



Li-ion 00

### ❖ Available charging adapter

For details, refer to the operation manual of AC adapter or DC adapter.

#### **AC Adapter 03 (optional)/AC Adapter 04 (optional)/AC**

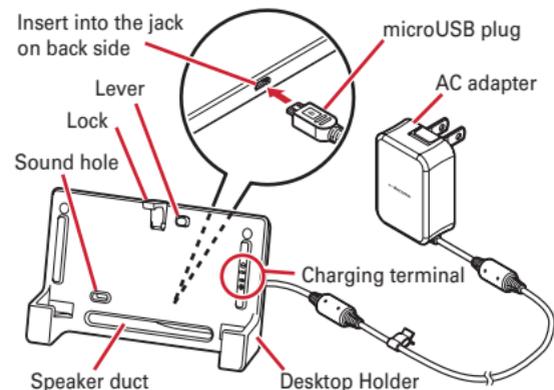
**Adapter F05 (optional)/AC Adapter F06 (optional)** : Between 100V and 240V AC. AC adapters have a plug dedicated to 100V AC (for domestic use). When using AC adapters in the range of AC 100V and 240V overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to the country you are staying is required. Also, do not charge the battery with a transformer for overseas travel.

**DC Adapter 03 (optional)** : Use for charging in a car.

## ◆ Charging with Desktop Holder

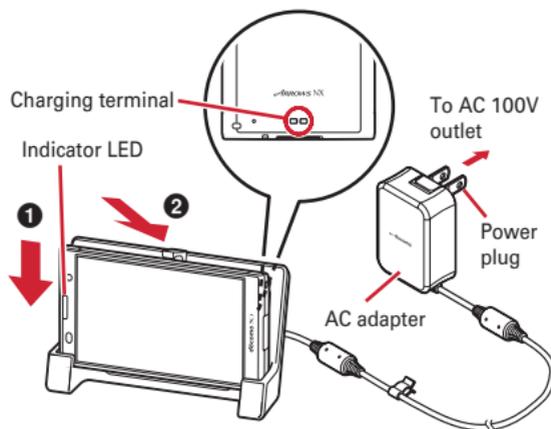
Using included Desktop Holder F40 and optional AC Adapter 04 is explained here.

- 1 Insert the microUSB plug of the AC adapter into the connection jack on the back side of the Desktop Holder horizontally with B-engraved side facing up



- 2 Make sure that the charging terminals of Desktop Holder and that of the terminal are aligned, then insert the terminal into the Desktop Holder inclining it to the front (1)
- 3 Push the terminal toward the lock of the Desktop Holder until it clicks (2)
  - Check that the terminal is firmly fixed by the lock of the Desktop Holder.

- 4 Insert the AC adapter's power plug into an outlet
  - Indicator LED lights red while charging, and turns off when charging is complete.



- 5 When charging is complete, remove the AC adapter's power plug from the outlet, then remove the terminal from the Desktop Holder
- 6 Remove microUSB plug from the Desktop Holder

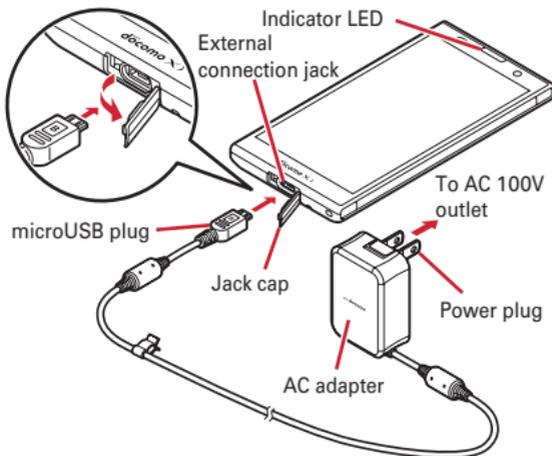
## ✓ INFORMATION

- In-pur specification of Desktop Holder F40 is 5.0V 1.5A. However you can use it combining with AC Adapter 04 (Output 5.0V 1.8A).
- Do not tuck down a strap string etc. between the terminal and the Desktop Holder.
- Be careful not to subject excessive force to the lock of the Desktop Holder, such as pressing it down strongly.
- The Desktop Holder has a sound hole so that expanded sound is emitted from the speaker duct. Do not cover the hole or allow dust to adhere.
- When charging starts with the Home screen displayed (including sleep mode, lock screen), menu for horizontal display appears (Theater mode).
  - Theater mode ends when the terminal is removed from the Desktop Holder, however an application activated while in Theater mode keeps being displayed.
  - If the terminal is turned on after being set to the Desktop Holder, Theater mode does not activate.
  - When Theater mode is displayed, the terminal goes into sleep mode according to the sleep settings.
  - You can show/hide Theater mode or set application to be activated. →P125
- Connect specified AC adapter to the Desktop Holder.

## ◆ Charging with AC adapter

You can charge with an optional AC Adapter 04.

- ① **Open the jack cap of the terminal (→P21), insert a microUSB plug of the AC adapter into the external connection jack with B-engraved side facing up**
- ② **Insert the AC adapter's power plug into an outlet**
  - Indicator LED lights in red while charging, and turns off when charging is complete.
- ③ **When charging is complete, remove the AC adapter's power plug from the outlet**
- ④ **Remove the microUSB plug from the terminal, and close the jack cap of the terminal**



## ◆ Charging with a PC

If you connect the terminal with a PC using a PC connection USB cable T01 (optional), you can charge the terminal with a PC.

- When a screen of new hardware detection or operation selection appears on the PC, select "キャンセル (Cancel)".

## Turning power ON/OFF

### ◆ Turning power ON

#### 1 Press and hold (2 sec. or more) until the indicator LED lights in green

The terminal vibrates and the lock screen appears following the startup screen.

#### 2 On the lock screen,

- Lock screen → P44
- Depending on selected lock option (→ P134), authenticate on the lock screen.

#### ■ Turning power ON for the first time

After setting up Google account (→ P147) and Setting my body (My physical profile) (→ P144), make initial setting of docomo service. Follow the onscreen instructions.

- When a confirmation screen for sending terminal error information appears, tap [OK].
- When a software update confirmation screen appears, tap [OK].
- When the instruction guide appears, tap [Do not show this again] or [OK].

### ◆ Turning power OFF

#### 1 Press and hold until the phone options menu appears

#### 2 [Power off] → [OK]

The terminal turns off vibrating.

- Press and hold  for 10 seconds or more to shut down the power forcibly.

## Basic operation

### ◆ Using touch panel

There are 2 types of operations: an operation by touching the touch panel directly with your finger (touch operation) and operation without touching (hovering function).

- Hovering function → P33
- Set whether to vibrate when tapping is recognized (Distinct touch → P124).

## ❖ Notes for using the touch panel

---

The touch panel is designed for being touched lightly with fingers. Do not push it forcibly with a finger or press it with sharp objects (nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.).

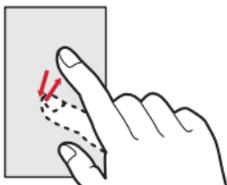
- Touching the touch panel may not work in the following cases. Note that it may cause malfunction.
  - Operation with gloved hands
  - Operation with tip of fingernail
  - Operation with a foreign object on the display
  - Operation with protective sheet or seal on the display
  - Operation with the touch panel wet
  - Operation with finger wet by sweat or water
  - Operation under water

## ❖ Tap/Double-tap

---

**Tap** : Touch the screen lightly and release the finger quickly.

**Double-tap** : Tap twice quickly.



Example : Tap

## ❖ Touch and hold

---

Touch the screen for a while. Some operations can be operated by keeping touching the screen with a finger.

## ❖ Drag/Slide (Swipe)/Pan

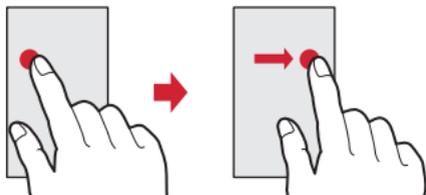
---

**Drag** : Touch an item or icon on the screen and move it to the desired position.

**Slide (Swipe)** : Touch the screen with your finger and drag to the desired position.

- For some applications, you can touch the screen with your fingers and move them up and down or rotate them to operate.

**Pan** : Drag the screen in some direction to view the desired part.

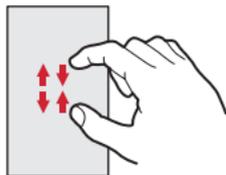


Example : Drag

## ❖ Pinch

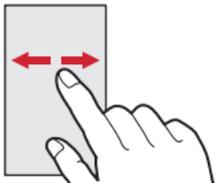
---

Touch the screen with two fingers and widen (pinch-out) or narrow (pinch-in) the fingers distance.



## ◆ Flick

Touch the screen and sweep the finger quickly.



## ◆ Hovering function

When the hovering function is enabled, you can operate the screen by holding your finger over the screen without touching.

- Set Hovering settings to ON. →P126
- Operations can be done when the distance between the touch panel and finger is within approximately 1 cm.
- If protective sheet or sticker is put on the touch panel, sensitivity of hovering function reduces.

## ◆ Available functions and operations

### ■ Gallery

Hold your finger over the album to display images in the album in slideshow.

### ■ Browser

Hold your finger at the top/bottom of the screen to scroll it in the direction of the finger held over.

- When entering URL or entering characters on page contents (including when keypad is hidden or USB/Bluetooth keyboard is used), this function is not available.
- The function is not available in Chrome.
- On some websites, this function may not be available.

### ■ Lock screen

The screen changes linking with movement of finger held over. It is available only when the home application is set to other than docomo Palette UI and Select lock is set to No lock.

### ■ Application list

Hold your finger over an application icon to zoom in. You can check the hidden part of the application name. It is available only when docomo Palette UI is set.

### ■ Other applications

Some applications are compatible with hovering function. In the terminal, "クレーンゲーム (Crane game)" is compatible with the hovering function.

## ◆ Switching the portrait/landscape view

The terminal supports a motion sensor that senses orientation or motion of the terminal. You can switch display view by tilting the terminal vertical or horizontal (Auto-rotate screen→P126).

- Even when you change the orientation of the terminal, the screen may not change depending on the screen displayed.
- Hold the terminal with your hands and shake it 2 times or more, then the terminal returns and fixes to portrait view from landscape view changed by auto-rotate (Shake to unrotate→P127).

## ◆ Screenshot

You can save a screen displayed on the terminal as an image.

- Some screens may not be saved.

### 1 Press and hold and at the same time (1 sec. or more)

To check the image, open the Notification panel and tap a notification for screenshot, or from the Home screen, →[Gallery]→[Screenshot].

## Character entry

**Enter characters using software keyboard displayed on the screen.**

- Entering characters with NX!input is mainly described in this section.
- Switching to other input method is available.→P37
- You can connect an external keyboard to enter characters.→P39

## ◆ Using keypad

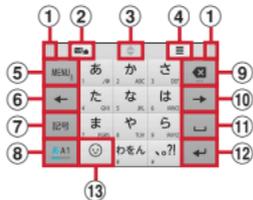
You can enter characters using numeric keypad, QWERTY keypad or handwritten input.

- You can activate voice input from each keypad.
- When Overwrite handwritten input is valid in "Handwritten input setting", handwritten input is available with the numeric or QWERTY keypad displayed.→P37

### ■ Numeric keypad

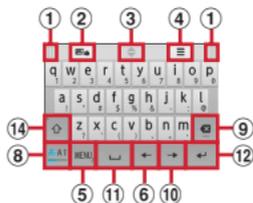
Multiple characters are assigned to a key.

- You can select input method from Flick input, Numeric keypad input, Gesture input or 2-touch input.→P36



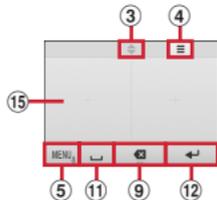
## ■ QWERTY keypad

Enter characters using Romaji input.



## ■ Handwritten input

Enter characters in handwriting.



- Some key displays may be changed depending on the setting or condition.

- ① Drag left or right to change the keypad position
- ② ON/OFF of Overwrite handwritten input
- ③ Drag up or down to adjust height of keypad
- ④ Show size adjustment bar

- ⑤  : Show menu

- When the menu is displayed, the following operations are available.

**QWERTYキー (QWERTY keypad)** : Switch to QWERTY keypad

**テンキー (Numeric keypad)** : Switch to Numeric keypad

**手書き (Handwritten input)** : Switch to handwritten input

**全画面手書き (Handwritten in full-screen)** : Switch to full-screen handwritten input

**上書き手書き (Overwrite handwritten input)** : ON/OFF of overwrite handwritten input

**定型文 (Common phrase)** : Display common phrases

**記号 (Symbol)** : Display symbol list

**顔文字 (Smiley)** : Display list of smiley/symbol/pict D

**ATOKダイレクト (ATOK direct)** : Quote 電話帳 / ATOKダイレクト (Phonebook/ATOK direct input) or Password manager

**設定 (Settings)** : NXInput and ATOK

**テーマ切り替え (Change theme)** : Change design of keypad

 (Touch and hold) : Activate voice input

 : Display characters assigned to a key in the reverse order

- ⑥ Move the cursor to left
- ⑦ Display a symbol list
- ⑧ Switch character type (Kana, alphabet, number)
- ⑨ Delete a character to the left of the cursor (Backspace)
  - Flick a key to left to operate [左全削除 (Delete all on left)]/[文 (単語削除) (Sentence (Delete word))], flick it up to operate [右全削除 (Delete all on right)]/[Delete] (delete a character to the right of the cursor), etc.
- ⑩ Move the cursor to right

- ⑪  : Enter space
-  : Convert character
- ⑫  : Fix or enter linefeed
  - Flick a key to left after a character is fixed to operate [確定取消 (Cancel fixed word)].
  -  : Return to the character entry screen from symbol list or list of smiley/pict/pict D (panel switch)
- ⑬  : Display a list of smiley/pict/pict D
-  : Convert to voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters
-  : Switch uppercase and lowercase of alphabet
- ⑭ Switch uppercase and lowercase of alphabet
  - Each time you tap, it switches uppercase→caps locked→lowercase.
- ⑮ Handwritten input area : Write a character with your finger to enter
  - When you write a character, a recognized character appears on the top of input area.
  - You can correct a character from the correction candidate list displayed when a recognized character is tapped. You can rewrite to show other candidates.

## ✓INFORMATION

- To hide the keypad, tap . To show the keypad again, tap the character entry field.

## ❖ Numeric keypad input

You can use the following 4 input methods in the numeric keypad.

- Select input method in "Numeric keypad settings" to use. → P37

### ■ Flick input

If you touch and keep on the key assigned the character you want to enter, characters (flick guide) will be displayed on that key. Flick towards the desired character without releasing your finger from the screen.

- To enter voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters, tap  once or twice after flicking.

### ■ Numeric keypad input

Tap continuously a key assigned the character you want to enter until the desired character is displayed.

### ■ Gesture input

If you tap and keep your finger on the key assigned the character you want to enter, characters (gesture guide) will be displayed around that key. Slide your finger to the desired character without removing your finger from the screen.

- To enter voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters, slide down once or twice without releasing finger from a key. Gesture guide for voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters around the key appears. Slide your finger to the desired character without releasing.



Example: Entering "は"<sup>h</sup>

- In the alphanumeric input mode, you can switch between uppercase and lowercase characters by sliding downwards without releasing your finger from the screen.

### ■ 2-touch input

Tap a key assigned a character you want to enter first, then tap a desired character.

### ◆ Switching to other input method

You can also switch to another input method such as the Android keyboard to enter characters.

- The Android keyboard does not support the Japanese input mode.
- When you switch to "NX!input Chinese" or "NX!input Korean", you can enter characters only with handwritten input.

**1** From the Home screen, → [Settings] → In PERSONAL, [More...] → [Language & input]

**2** [Default] → Select an input method

### ✓ INFORMATION

- To return to the ATOK Japanese keypad, select [NX!input].

## ◆ Setting NX!input and ATOK

Set operations, design, etc. of each keypad during character input. Also, you can register words (Personal dictionary) or edit common phrases, initialize settings, etc.

**1** From the Home screen, → [Settings] → In PERSONAL, [More...] → [Language & input]

**2** Tap in [NX!input]

**3** Set each item

**Operation sound/Vibrate** : Set Keypad sound and Keypad vibration.

**Numeric keypad settings** : Set Input mode (Flick input/ Numeric keypad input/Gesture input/2-touch input), Flick input settings (Enable Multi-tap input excluding numeric keypad input, Flick guide, Flick Sensitivity, Modifier key flick, Alphabet key flick), Numeric keypad input (auto cursor), Gesture input settings (Enable Multi-tap input excluding numeric keypad input, Gesture guide) or Character delete key.

**QWERTY keypad settings** : Set Direct alphanumeric input, Show numeric keys (vertical screen/horizontal screen).

**Handwritten input setting** : Set Overwrite handwritten input (Numeric keypad, QWERTY keypad), Number of input boxes (Vertical display/Horizontal display), Number of input boxes (Full screen vertical/Full screen horizontal), Recognition speed, Set lines (Thickness, Color for NORMAL HANDWRITING/FULL SCREEN HANDWRITING).

**Conversion setting** : Select keyboard type for Japanese/English/Numeric or set Input prediction, Showing prediction candidates before text input, Use half-width space, Auto space insert, Delete key flick, Back key, Auto full screen (horizontal), Correct touched position, Hardware keyboard preferentially, Multi-touch.

- Prediction conversion candidates do not appear for character entry on some applications.

**Set selection list** : Set Font size, Number of lines to display (vertical screen/horizontal screen), Delay time of showing candidates.

**Design** : Set Theme, Animation, Adjust keyboard height.

**Utility** : Edit Personal dictionary in Dictionary utility, edit common phrases in Common phrase utility, share words registered in Windows/Mac version ATOK of ATOK Sync.

**Initialize** : Initialize settings or Initializing learning data.

- Learned data, edited personal dictionary/common phrase are not deleted even if [Initializing settings] is executed.

## ◆ Editing text

---

You can copy texts in the character entry field, web page or received mail and cut and paste texts in the character entry field.

- Operation method may vary by application.

## ❖ Copying/Cutting texts

---

### ■ Copying/Cutting in the character entry field

#### 1 Touch and hold a text

Selected text is highlighted.

- Slide knobs on the both end of text range to adjust selected range.
- To select all, tap [SELECT ALL].
- To deselect, tap out of selected range.

#### 2 [COPY]/[CUT]

### ■ Copying text in a web page etc.

#### 1 Touch and hold a text

Text range is highlighted.

- Slide knobs on the both ends of text range to adjust selected range.
- To select all, tap [SELECT ALL].
- To deselect, tap out of selected range.
- For some websites, tap [Select text] from the displayed menu etc.

#### 2 [COPY]

The text is copied to the clipboard.

## ❖ Pasting a text

### 1 Move the cursor to the destination to paste and touch and hold → [PASTE]

The text is pasted to the cursor position.

## ◆ Using external keyboard

You can enter characters by connecting the terminal with a USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard (HID/SPP).

- 101 keyboard, 104 keyboard, 106 keyboard, OADG 109 keyboard and OADG 109A keyboard are supported.

## ❖ Connecting external keyboard

- Connecting with Bluetooth keyboard → P155

### ■ Connecting with USB keyboard

### 1 Plug a USB keyboard into the external connection jack of the terminal

## ❖ Setting external keyboard

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → In PERSONAL, [More...] → [Language & input]

- When external keyboard is connected, a physical keyboard field appears.

### 2 On the physical keyboard, select a keyboard → [Set up keyboard layouts] → Mark a keyboard layout → → Select a keyboard layout

## Initial settings

You can set necessary items collectively for the first time to use the terminal.

- Each setting can be changed anytime.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings]

### 2 [Initial settings] → Set each item

**Slide-in function** : Set a function which allows you to activate an application by sliding your finger from the edge of the screen and to capture screen as an image. → P145

**Select lock** : Set whether to display lock screen or require authentication on the unlock screen when sleep mode is canceled → P134

**Security unlock preference** : Set authentication type when canceling screen lock. → P135

**Easy data transfer support** : Move data of a mobile phone using a microSD card.

## ❖ Easy data transfer support

Move mobile phone data saved on a microSD card to the terminal.

- Move data of phonebook, redialing/incoming history, schedule, bookmark, alarm, received/sent/unsent mails.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Initial settings] → [Easy data transfer support]

Check guidance for each data moving location and tap [OK]. Then follow the onscreen instructions.

- If you do not want to display a guidance for moving location next time, mark [Don't display this screen again.] before tapping [OK].

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- Call history is overwritten to redial/received call history in the original location. Call history saved to the terminal before data transfer is deleted.
- To view moved received/sent/unsent mails, from the Home screen,  → [sp-mode mail] →  → [Import] to select the location.
- To display the moved schedule, synchronize with the account on the moved location. The last registered Google account is set as an account to move to.
- On some mobile phones which do not support Easy data transfer support, part of data cannot be moved.

## ❖ About other initial settings

Set the following items as required in addition to the initial setting items.

- Google account setup etc. → P147
- Email account settings → P65
- Wi-Fi functions settings → P116
- Access point (APN) settings → P114
- Switching to English display → P146

## Indicator LED

Indicator LED notifies the terminal states such as charging and missed call by lighting or flashing.

### ■ Main notification type, lighting/flashing

**Turning power ON** : Light once in green

**Charging error** : Flash in red

**New SMS** : Flash in a color specified in [Messaging] → P64

**Missed call, phone memo** : Flash in a color specified in [Missed call LED] → P124

**Charging** : Light in red

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- Setting and action of indicator LED may vary by application.
- For functions that can be set in both indicator LED and Illumination, Illumination setting comes first. Some applications may work according to the settings of application. This function comes first when turning the power ON.

## Screen/Icon

### ◆ Icons on Navigation bar

Operation icons appear on the navigation bar shown at the bottom of the screen. Names and actions of icons are as follows.



Navigation bar

#### Back icon

Tap : Return to the previous screen, exit out of application

#### Home icon

Tap : Return to the Home screen → P47

Touch and hold : Display recently used applications → P46

Touch and hold, then slide your finger to  : Activate

Shabette concier or Search by Google

#### Menu icon

Tap : Show currently available settings etc.

#### Slide display icon

Tap : Move the whole screen to the direction of the navigation bar/return to the original view

### ◆ Slide display

When you hold the terminal in one hand, you can move the whole screen to the direction of the navigation bar to operate on the screen where your finger did not reach to.

Tap  to display the whole screen with it moved to the direction of the navigation bar (Slide display).

- For horizontal screen, tap  to display the whole screen with it moved to the direction of the navigation bar. However, in horizontal display, the status bar cannot be moved.
- Drag a free area in the slide display to adjust range of sliding.
- The screen returns to the original position by the following operations.
  - Tapping  or 
  - Switching from vertical screen to horizontal screen, or from horizontal screen to vertical screen
  - When Theater mode is activated
  - When a call is received, or an application which can be operated in full-screen is displayed
  - Displaying the screen again after it is switched to sleep mode
  - Displaying the keyboard for character entry
  - When illumination is linked to animation
- You can set whether to show/hide slide display icon. → P126

## ◆ Icons on the status bar

Various conditions can be checked with notification icons and status icons appearing on the status bar.

Notification icon    Status icon



### ■ Main notification icons

- : New Gmail
- : New Email
- : New sp-mode mail
- : New SMS
- : New Area Mail
- : Sending SMS is failed
- : Problem with synchronization
- : Wi-Fi is on, and Wi-Fi network is available
- : Wi-Fi tethering is enabled
- : USB tethering is enabled
- : Wi-Fi tethering and USB tethering are enabled
- : Receiving/Calling
- : Missed call
- : Call on hold
- : Phone memo exists
- : Message in Voice mail Service
- : Uploading data completed/Downloading data is complete
- : Installing applications from Google Play etc. is complete/  
Update of application from Google Play etc. is available
- :  $\phi$  3.5 earphone is connected (terminal microphone input)
- :  $\phi$  3.5 earphone is connected (earphone microphone input)

- (gray) / / : Watching/recording/preparing for recording 1Seg
- (blue) : Watching Full Seg
- : VPN connection
- / / : Software update available/completed/unable to continue
- : Upgrade Android version
- : NX! eco
- : Screen is zoomed in with Best-fit zoom
- : Screen is fixed with Shake to unrotate
- : Positioning with GPS
- : FM transmitter is ON
- : FM transmitter OFF by competition
- : Receiving Mobacas
- : Omakase Lock is set
- : Available memory on the terminal is low
- : Check for application battery (Detect applications that consumes battery power)
- : Dolby Digital Plus is ON

### ■ Main status icons

- : Signal strength
- : Out of service area
- : During international roaming
- : LTE / 3G / GPRS available
- $\triangle$  (Uploading) or  $\nabla$  (Downloading) appears in white during communication
- : Airplane mode
- : Wi-Fi is connected
- $\triangle$  (Uploading) or  $\nabla$  (Downloading) appears in white during communication
- : Bluetooth function is ON
- : Bluetooth device is connected

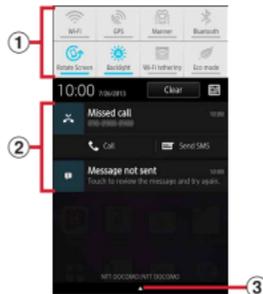
-  (blue) : NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set to the terminal and docomo mini UIM card
-  (blue) : NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set to the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
-  (red) : Omakase lock is set to the terminal and docomo mini UIM card
-  (red) : Omakase lock is set to the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
-  : Phone memo is set
-  : 10 phone memos are recorded (Max.)
-  : Speaker phone is ON
-  : Microphone is muted
-  : Ringtone volume 0
-  : Vibrator is ON
-  : Public mode (Drive mode)
-  : Manner mode (Manner mode)
-  : Manner mode (Manner mode (Silent))
-  : Manner mode (Manner mode (Alarm))
-  : Manner mode (Original manner)
-  : Charging is needed
-  : Battery is nearly empty
-  : Battery level is low
-  : Battery level is enough
-  : Charging
-  (white) : Keep lit when held is set (screen is lit detecting motion)
-  (gray) : Keep lit when held is set
-  : Kana input mode
-  : Alphabet input mode
-  : Number input mode
-  : Handwritten input mode
-  : Pictogram/smiley/symbol entry
-  : Improved sound for IP calls

## ◆ Notification panel

Open the Notification panel to check information of notification icon or make settings.

### ❖ Opening the Notification panel

#### 1 Drag the status bar downward



#### ① Setting switch

Tap a setting switch to switch each setting.

- Tap  to display the setting menu.

#### ② Notification

Tap each notification to check the details or make necessary settings.

- Tap [Clear] to delete items on the Notification panel. [Clear] may not appear depending on the content of the notification.

#### ③ Tab

## ✓INFORMATION

- Tap [Call] or [Send SMS] displayed below the missed call notification to dial or send SMS. However, when there are 2 or more missed calls, they do not appear.

## ❖ Closing the Notification panel

- 1 Drag the tab at the bottom of the Notification panel up or tap 

## ❖ Changing setting switch

Change setting switch allocations.

- 1 Touch and hold a setting switch on the Notification panel → Select a function from Select panel screen

## ◆ When screen is off

When no operation is performed in a certain period of time, the screen automatically turns off according to the sleep/Keep lit when held setting and the terminal turns into sleep mode.

- 1  Sleep mode is deactivated, and the lock screen appears.  
Setting sleep mode manually : 

## ✓INFORMATION

- Alternatively, press the fingerprint sensor to activate/deactivate sleep mode.
- When receiving a call in sleep mode, sleep mode is deactivated.

## ◆ When lock screen appears

### 1 On the lock screen,

The lock is canceled.



"ひつじのしつじくん® (Butler Sheep)"  
©NTT DOCOMO

- Depending on selected lock option (→P134), authenticate on the lock screen.
- Tap  on the lock screen to activate the camera.
- Tap  on the lock screen to activate Shabette concier or Search by Google.

## ✓INFORMATION

- Alternatively, slide your finger on the fingerprint sensor to cancel the screen lock. When you operate after sleep mode is deactivated by pressing the fingerprint sensor, release your finger from the sensor and then slide the finger.
- Numbers of missed calls and unread sp-mode mails are shown even when lock screen is displayed.
- The screen goes into sleep mode on the lock screen according to the sleep setting.

- When the lock is set to No lock, the Notification panel can be displayed on the lock screen.

## ❖ Widget on the lock screen

---

Flick right on the lock screen to display a widget adding screen by default.

- You can add a widget screen from the widget adding screen, or change the top screen of lock screen to a widget screen.

**Adding widget screen** : On the widget adding screen , [+ ]→ Select a widget

- Added widget is located at the right on the widget adding screen.

**Changing the top screen of lock screen** : Display a widget screen you want to set to the lock screen→ Touch and hold the widget screen→ Drag it to the right edge

**Sorting widget screens** : Touch and hold a widget screen→ Drag it to the destination

**Deleting a widget screen** : Touch and hold a widget screen→ Drag it to [X Remove]

## ✓ INFORMATION

---

- You can set to activate the camera by flicking left on the lock screen.→ P134

## ◆ Slide-in launcher/Capture & Draw

---

By default, you can call out Slide-in launcher and Capture & Draw by sliding your finger from the slide spot (start point for sliding) at the corner of the screen.

- Slide-in function→ P145

## ❖ Slide-in launcher

---

Activate an application from a shortcut in Slide-in launcher.

### 1 Slide from the slide spot to the center of the screen, then release your finger at a shortcut in Slide-in launcher

- By default, Slide-in launcher is set in the slide spot at the lower left of the screen.
- You can activate Slide-in launcher settings by releasing your finger at the position of  which is called out at the same time as the Slide-in launcher.

### 2 Perform target operations

## ❖ Capture & Draw

---

Capture displayed screen to edit as an image or share with other application.

- Some screens may not be captured.

### 1 Slide from the slide spot to the center of screen and then release your finger in Capture & Draw area

- By default, Capture & Draw is set in the slide spot at the lower right of the screen.

### 2 Select operation

- Captured images are saved in [Screenshot] of Gallery.
- In case you capture a web page while using the browser, URL information is also obtained. To set whether to paste URL information when sharing, operate from the image editing screen, → [URL sharing setting].

## ◆ Customizing screen

You can customize screens for pattern authentication, fingerprint authentication, incoming/outgoing call, or keyboard (NX!input).

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Customize screen]

**2** Set required items

## Task manager

If you stop operation of an application by tapping  etc., the application may remain active in the background. Also, 2 or more applications may be running depending on the operations. This function allows you to check running applications, switch display, or end applications.

**1** Touch and hold 

The recently used applications appear.

- Tap a thumbnail to display an application.
- Touch and hold a thumbnail to remove from the list or check application information.
- To exit all applications, tap [Delete all].

## Switching the home applications

Change the screen (Home screen) displayed by pressing the home key.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Homescreen selector]

**2** Select a home application to switch to

# docomo Palette UI

## Home screen

Home screen is the start screen to use applications. You can return to the Home screen anytime by tapping .



① **Status bar**→P42

Drag the status bar downward to display Notification panel.  
→P43

② **Indicator**

Notify which home screen you are in. Flick left or right to switch the display.

③ **Customize area**

You can locate shortcuts, widgets, and folders.

④ **Dock**

Displayed on the Home screen.

### ✓INFORMATION

- From the Home screen, tap  to display the setting menu (→P110) from [Settings] or to check docomo Palette UI operation guide from [Help].

## ◆ Customizing Home screen

You can locate desired application shortcuts, widgets, etc. on the Home screen.

### 1 Touch and hold blank area in the customize area

### 2 [Shortcut]/[Widget]/[Folder]/[Group]/[Machi-chara display setting]→Select or set items as required

- Touch and hold an item and drag it to move.
- Some widgets can be changed in its size by touching and holding.
- Touch and hold a shortcut and drag it onto another shortcut to create a folder including these shortcuts.
- Touch and hold a folder and tap [Edit name] to rename folder.

### ✓INFORMATION

- You can also locate shortcuts, folders or groups in the Dock. However,  cannot be moved/deleted/changed.

## ❖ Deleting shortcut etc.

---

### 1 Touch and hold a shortcut etc. you want to delete → [Delete]

- Alternatively, after touching and holding the shortcut, drag it to  at the bottom of the screen to delete.

**Uninstalling application or widget :** Touch and hold a shortcut or widget → [Uninstall] → [OK]

## ◆ Changing Kisekae/Wallpaper

---

### 1 Touch and hold blank area in the customize area

### 2 [Kisekae]/[Wallpaper] → Select or set item

#### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Alternatively, from the Home screen,  → Tap [Kisekae]/[Wallpaper].
- To change screens for pattern authentication, fingerprint authentication, outgoing/incoming call or keyboard (NX!input), set from "Customize screen". → P46

## ◆ Adding/Deleting home screen

---

Up to 12 home screens can be set.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Home screens]

- For the first activation, the instruction guide appears. Tap [Do not show this again] or [OK].

### 2 Perform required operations

**Adding :** [+]

**Sorting :** Touch and hold a thumbnail of home screen → Drag to the position you want

**Deleting :** [X]

- If any items are located, a confirmation screen for deleting appears.
- Alternatively, you can touch and hold thumbnail of home screen, then tap [Delete] to delete.

**Displaying :** Tap a thumbnail of home screen

#### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Alternatively, you can pinch-in at any position in the Home screen or touch and hold a blank area in the customize area → Tap [Home screens] to display home screen list.

## Application list

Display the application list so that you can activate registered applications or change the terminal settings.

### 1 From the Home screen,

- For the first activation, the instruction guide appears.  
Tap [Do not show this again] or [Set].



- 1 Application/Recommends switching tab
- 2 Group
- 3 Applications in a group
- 4 Number of applications in a group

- Number of unread messages appears on some application icon.

**Showing/Hiding applications in a group :** Tap a group name

**Showing/Hiding applications in all groups :** Pinch-out/pinch-in

**Adding to the Home screen :** Touch and hold an application or group→[Add]

**Switching the application list/recommended applications :**  
/[Recommendations]

## ◆ Pre-installed applications

-  **Chrome** : View web pages like on a PC.
-  **DiXiM Player** : Watch and listen recorded TV programs, photos, music, videos on the home network with your devices. For usage, Wi-Fi environment is required.→P159
-  **docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection** : An application which helps you use public wireless LAN provided by DOCOMO, "docomo Wi-Fi" and home wireless environment. The widget allows you to connect/disconnect to/from Wi-Fi by one-touch operation in a Wi-Fi area.
-  **Document Viewer** : Display Microsoft office file etc.
-  **dmarket** : An application for activating dmarket. In dmarket, you can buy contents such as music, videos, books, etc. Also, applications on Google Play are introduced.→P74
-  **dmenu** : A shortcut application for "dmenu" to find contents you used in i-mode and joyful and convenient contents for smartphones.→P74
-  **Gmail** : Send/Receive Google account mails.→P68
-  **Google** : Search functions in the terminal or website.→P108
-  **Google+** : Use SNS to make better use of a large amount of data (such as mail, contacts, photos, office documents, etc.).
-  **Google Settings** : An application for setting Google services all at once.
-  **IC Tag/Barcode Reader** : Read IC tags and barcodes.
-  **iDアプリ (iD application)** : Make settings etc. for use of electronic money, iD.→P79
-  **i コンシェル (i-concier)** : An application for using i-concier. i-concier is a service with which a mobile phone supports your life like a butler or concierge.
-  **i チャンネル (i-channel)** : Use i-channel.

-  **KSfilemanager** : An application for managing data contents in the terminal, microSD card, etc.
-  **NOTTV** : Watch Mobacas. Enjoy broadcast programs/ contents such as "NOTTV".→P80
-  **Play Store** : Use Google Play.→P74
-  **Play Books** : View downloaded e-books.
-  **Play Music** : Play music.
-  **Play Movies & TV** : Rent movies to watch. You can download movies to watch anytime you want.
-  **spモードメール (sp-mode mail)** : Send and receive mail using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo.ne.jp). Pictograms and Deco-mail can be used, and automatic reception also is supported.→P63
-  **YouTube** : You can watch YouTube video.→P101
-  **Osaifu-Keitai** : Pay money etc. only by holding the terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc.→P76
-  **Camera** : Shoot still images or videos.→P93
-  **Gallery** : View still images or videos taken with the camera or downloaded from website and saved in a microSD card or the phone memory.→P99
-  **クレーンゲーム (Crane game)** : It is a crane game compatible with hovering function. When hovering is enabled, base of the crane game or prize of collection can be rotated.
-  **しゃべてコンシェル (Shabette concier)** : Speak "what you want to search" or "what you want to do" to the terminal. It understands your intention and display the best solution (in Japanese only).
-  **Schedule** : An application to create and manage schedules. It is compatible with i-concier service.
-  **Alarm Clock** : Set alarm clock which sounds at earlier time than the set time to wake up with comfort.→P106
-  **TV** : Watch Full Seg or 1Seg.→P85

-  **Talk** : Chat via Google Talk→P69
-  **ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)** : An application for using "Data Security service", "Phonebook backup" or "SD card backup". Back up and restore data such as phonebook entries.→P108
-  **docomo phonebook** : Register phone numbers or email addresses so that you can address someone from the contacts by simple operation.→P59
-  **ToruCa** : Acquire, display, search or refresh ToruCa.→P79
-  **Navigation** : Search routes toward destinations using Google Maps Navigation.
-  **フォトコレクション (Photo Collection)** : Upload photos and videos to view and arrange them on the Cloud.
-  **Browser** : View web pages like a PC.→P69
-  **Maps** : View your current location, find other locations and calculate routes.→P103
-  **Email** : Send/Receive emails to/from users of PC.→P65
-  **Messaging** : Send/Receive SMS.→P63
-  **Messenger** : Use chat function (group chat, etc.).
-  **Media Player** : Play music and videos.→P100
-  **Memo** : An application to create and manage memos. It is compatible with i-concier service.
-  **Local** : Search detailed information around where you are.→P105
-  **遠隔サポート (Remote support)** : Application for using "スマートフォンあんしん遠隔サポート (Smartphone Anshin Remote Support)". "スマートフォンあんしん遠隔サポート (Smartphone Anshin Remote Support)" is a service that allows staff of the Call center to support the terminal operations by remote-checking the display of your own terminal.→P177
-  **Voice Search** : Just speak to the terminal to use Google Search.

-  **Health Diary** : A health supporting service to design your body using a mobile phone and PC.
-  **Disaster kit** : Check received early warning "Area Mail", make settings and record/check messages on the docomo Disaster Message Board.
-  **Infrared** : Send or receive data such as phonebook entries via infrared communications. →P152
-  **Settings** : Make the terminal settings.
-  **Calculator** : Perform calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. →P107
-  **Phone** : You can make calls or phone settings. →P53
-  **e-Dictionaries +** : Leading dictionaries in Japan are integrated in one package dictionary software which supports your daily study/business scene. →P107
-  **Instruction Manual** : Instruction Manual for this terminal (in Japanese only). You can start function directly from the description.
-  **Calendar** : View calendar and register schedule. →P105

## ✓ INFORMATION

- The pre-installed applications are displayed in the application list by default.
- Some pre-installed applications require separate subscriptions (charged) to be used.
- Some pre-installed applications can be uninstalled. Even if you uninstall pre-installed applications, you can download some of them again from Play Store. →P74
- For some pre-installed applications, installation may be required by accessing Play Store or DOCOMO's site for the first activation.

## ◆ Managing the application list

### 1 When the application list is displayed, perform target operations

**Uninstalling an application** : Touch and hold an application → [Uninstall] → [OK]

**Sorting** : Touch and hold an application or group → Drag to the position you want to move to

- Alternatively, you can touch and hold an application, then select [Move] to move the application.

**Adding a group** :  → [Add group] → Enter a group name → [OK]

- Up to 50 groups can be set.

**Editing group name** : Touch and hold a group → [Edit name] → Enter group name → [OK]

**Changing group label** : Touch and hold a group → [Edit label] → Select a label

**Deleting a group** : Touch and hold a group → [Delete] → [Delete]

**Switching display format** :  → [List format] → [Tile view (vertical)]/[Tile view (horizontal)]/[List view]

**Changing number of recently-used applications to be displayed** :  → [Setting for Recently] → [8 items]/[12 items]/[16 items]

- Change number of applications displayed in category [Recently].

**Checking information of home application** :  → [Application info]

**Searching** :  → [Search]

- Search an application or phonebook data in the terminal, or information on the Web.

## ◆ Installing "Recommends" application

Tap [Recommends] tab to display applications recommended by NTT DOCOMO.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Recommends]

- For the first activation, an explanation screen for recommended application appears. After confirmation, tap [おすすめアプリを見る (View recommended applications)].

### 2 Select an application → Follow the onscreen instructions to download

- Downloaded applications are displayed in [Download Application] group of the application list. Some applications are displayed in [DOCOMO Services] group.
- To check all recommended applications, tap [おすすめアプリをすべて見る (View all recommended applications)] in [Recommends] tab.

# Calling

## Making a call

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Phone]

**2** [Dial] → Enter a phone number

- To correct phone number, tap .

**Notifying caller ID :**  → [Caller ID notification] → [Notify]/[Not notify]

- Your caller ID is important personal information. So, take care when notifying people of it.

**Selecting prefix :**  → [Select prefix] → Select a prefix

- Select a number registered in Prefix setting (prefix) (→ P57) beforehand to add before a phone number.

**Adding 2-sec pause/wait :**  → [Add 2-sec pause]/[Add wait] → Enter an additional number

- You can use [Add 2-sec pause] or [Add wait] to enter main phone number and additional code at once when entering the code additionally during a call for bank balance inquiries, ticket reservation services, etc.  
2-sec pause ", " : When the phone number is dialed, 2-second pause will be automatically inserted and then additional code will be sent.

Wait ", " : When the phone number is dialed, the phone will wait automatically and a confirmation message for sending additional code appears. When you tap [Yes], the additional code is sent.



**3**  
**4** When a call is ended, [End]

### ✓INFORMATION

- If your face etc. comes close to the proximity sensor during a call, the display goes out. It is redisplayed by moving away from the sensor.
- When the earphone is connected or while calling with the speakerphone, the proximity sensor stops and the display remains on even when the face, etc. comes close to the sensor.
- If you put the ear to the earpiece over the hair, etc. the proximity sensor does not work normally and the call may be interrupted.
- You can set to show/hide caller ID all at once in "Caller ID notification". →P57
- For details on sending touch-tone signals during a call, see "Operation during a call". →P55

## ◆ Emergency call

Emergency call	Phone number
Police call	110
Fire and emergency rescue	119
Coast guard	118

- This terminal supports "Emergency call location notification". If you use the terminal to place a call to emergency numbers such as 110, 119, or 118, the information of a location where you are calling from (location information) is automatically notified to the Emergency call acceptance organization such as the Police Station. The Emergency call acceptance organization may not be able to figure out your exact location depending on the location where you place a call or radio wave condition. When location information is notified, name of Emergency call acceptance organization you are calling to will appear. If you make a call hiding your caller ID, such as by entering a phone number with "184" for each call, the location information and phone number are not notified. However, the Emergency call acceptance organization may decide to obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings when they consider it is necessary for lifesaving, etc.  
Note that the areas/time for which the "Emergency call location information" is ready to be used vary depending on the preparatory state of each Emergency call acceptance organization.

- When you call the Police (110), Fire/Ambulance (119), or Maritime rescue (118) from the terminal, clearly indicate that you are calling from a mobile phone, then give your present location and mobile phone number. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the terminal for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.
- Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from.
- If the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted in Japan, emergency calls 110, 119 and 118 cannot be made on the PIN code entry screen, or during PIN code lock/PUK lock.
- If you dial 110, 119, or 118 overseas, an emergency call screen may appear but the call is normally sent.
- If you make an emergency call with Reject unregistered call enabled, Reject unregistered call will be disabled.

## ◆ International call (WORLD CALL)

Enter "+" to make an international call. Touch and hold "0" to enter "+".

- Using overseas → P164
- For details of "WORLD CALL", contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

**1** From the Home screen, [Phone] → [Dial] → Touch and hold "0" → Enter "Country code-Area code (City code) omitted prefix 0 and phone number" → [Call]

- In some countries and areas such as Italy, "0" is required.
- When selecting from the country list to enter "+ country code", enter the area code (city code) and phone number, [Menu] → [International call] → Select a country.

## Receiving a call

**1** A call is received

[Mute] [Speaker]: Stop ringtone sounding or vibration.

**2** [Activate] → [Accept]

**Declining call**: [Activate] → [Reject]

**Quick reply**: [Activate] → [Reject call with SMS] → Select a message

**On-hold**: [Menu] → [On hold]

**Recording phone memo**: [Menu] → [Phone memo]

**3** When a call is ended, [End]

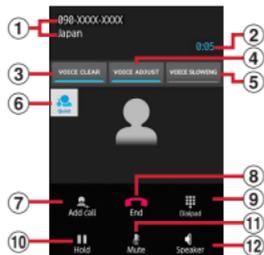
## ✓ INFORMATION

- When you could not answer a call, icon (→P42) appears on the status bar. Open the Notification panel (→P43) to check missed calls, dial or send SMS.

## Operation during a call

The following operations are possible in the screen during a call.

- You can adjust call volume by [Mute] [Speaker] during a call.



**1** Name, phone number or area

**2** Call time

**3** Enable/disable Voice clear

Improve call sound to be heard clearly by emphasizing the other party's voice or adjusting the listening sound. During operation, the terminal recognizes your action and adjusts to the more suitable sound quality (Voice adjusting) than Voice clear.

#### ④ Setting for Voice adjust

Make voice sound during a call clear according to the My physical profile (→P144). During a call, strength of adjustment can be set.

#### ⑤ Enable/disable Voice slowing

The terminal adjusts the other party's voice to be heard slowly and makes it easier to be heard. Even when the other party speaks without intervals, the voice is heard at the normal speed.

#### ⑥ Status of Voice clear/Voice adjusting

#### ⑦ Call another party\*

#### ⑧ End call

#### ⑨ Show/hide the dial keypad

Send touch-tone signals (DTMF tones).

#### ⑩ Hold on call/cancel on-hold

#### ⑪ Turn the microphone on/off (mute)

Make your voice inaudible to the other party.

#### ⑫ Enable/disable speaker phone

Make the other party's voice audible from the speaker to talk on a handsfree phone.

\* Subscription to Call waiting is required.

## Recent calls

You can check call history.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Phone]
- 2 [Recent calls]



#### ① Incoming button

Display received call history only.

#### ② All button

Display all incoming and outgoing calls.

#### ③ Outgoing button

Display dialed call history only.

#### ④ Call history icons

 for outgoing call,  for incoming call,  for missed call appear respectively.

#### ⑤ Status icon

 : Caller ID is notified\*

 : Caller ID is not notified\*

 : International roaming

 : Koe-no-Takuhaibin is sent

\* Appears when calling with "186"/"184" prefixed to the phone number or when entering phone number  → [Caller ID notification] → [Notify]/[Not notify] to call.

## ⑥ Name or phone number

Tap to display the action list. Tap an item in the action list to make a call, send an SMS, add to phonebook, display the profile screen, etc. Touch and hold to edit phone number and call or to delete from the history.

## ⑦ Call icon

Tap to dial a call

## ■ Recent calls screen menu

On the Recent calls screen, tap  to delete all items, make call settings (→P57), etc.

## ✓INFORMATION

- Depending on the home application, the setting made from the Home screen, →[Phone]→[Recent calls]/[Favorites]/[Dial]→→[Set start-up screen] may not be applied.

## Phone memo

Set phone memo or play/delete recorded phone memos.

### 1 From the Home screen, →[Phone]→→[Call settings]→[Phone memo]

### 2 Set required items

**Phone memos** : Display a list of recorded phone memos.

Tap a phone memo to play the message. To delete a message, touch and hold a phone memo→[1 memo delete]→[Yes].

- Up to 60 seconds per message and up to 10 messages can be recorded for Phone memo.

**Enable Phone memo** : Set ON/OFF of Phone memo.

- If number of saved phone memos exceeds the saving limit, the terminal does not answer calls with Phone memo even when the setting is enabled.

**Set answer time** : Set a ringing time for answering with Phone memo.

**Set reply message** : Set reply message.

## Call settings

Make various settings for DOCOMO network services, call and Internet call.

### 1 From the Home screen, →[Phone]→→[Call settings]

### 2 Set each item

**Network service** : The following DOCOMO network services are available.

Koe-no-Takuhaibin : Use the service, or check/change the settings.

Voice mail service : Start/stop the service, or set call time, etc.

Call forwarding service : Start/stop the service, change forwarding number, etc.

Call waiting : Start/stop the service, or check the settings.  
Caller ID notification : Set notification, or check the settings.

Nuisance call blocking service : Register, remove, or check registered numbers.

Caller ID display request service : Start/stop service, or check the settings.

Second call settings : Set receiving options.

Call notification : Start/stop the service, or check the settings.

English guidance : Set or check the settings.

Remote operation settings : Start/stop the service, or check the settings.

Public mode (power OFF) settings : Start/stop the service, or check the settings.

- To set Public mode (Drive mode), from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → Mark [Public mode]

**Roaming settings** : Setting steps → P168

**Advanced call settings** : Set Sub address settings, Prefix settings, or Reject unregistered call.

**Sound & Vibration settings** : Set Phone ringtone, Vibrate on ring, Dialpad touch tones. → P124

**Reject SMS** : Edit reject SMS messages for incoming call.

**Phone memo** : Setting steps → P57

**Decline call** : Set conditions for the parties you want to decline.

- In [Blacklist], you can add up to 100 phone numbers.

**Reverb suppression** : Set whether to suppress reverberant sound during a call in a place where voice sound echoes to make your voice clear to be heard.

**Improved sound for IP calls** : Set whether to use sound improvement.

- Sound quality of calls via application using Voice over IP technology may be inferior to ordinary phone calls due to network delay etc. The function improves ease of hearing under noisy environment with the sound quality realized by the application as a basis and reduces noise or echoes heard by the other party. It is not effective for sound interruption, delay, etc.
- Upgrading application may make the function less effective. In that case, turn off the setting.
- The function may not be effective on some applications. In that case, turn off the setting.
- The function does not work for calls using Bluetooth.

**SIP Accounts** : Set for Internet calling account.

**Use Internet calling** : Set for using Internet calling.

**Open source licenses** : Confirm open source licenses.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- You can also set/cancel Public mode (Drive mode) from the phone options menu displayed by pressing and holding .

# Phonebook

You can register phone numbers, email addresses, etc. to the phonebook. You can contact registered parties through simple operation.

- To use cloud on the phonebook, docomo phonebook application is needed. For the first time activation of docomo phonebook application (including after the application is initialized), "Use of Cloud" screen appears and you can start using Cloud.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook]

**2** [Contacts]



- Name**  
Tap to display the profile screen. Tap thumbnail image to make a call, send SMS, etc.
- Registration button**  
Register a new phonebook entry.
- Group button**  
Display groups of phonebook entries.

- Search button**  
Display the phonebook search screen.
- Index button**  
Display the index.

## ■ Phonebook list

By tapping  on the phonebook list, you can delete, make general settings, etc.

## ◆ Adding an entry to the phonebook

**1** In the phonebook list, [Register] → Select an account if necessary → Set required items → [Save]

- Contacts data registered in docomo account can be synchronized with Cloud.
- Changing to FUJITSU account may lose data used in docomo services.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- You can also add phonebook entry from the call history.

## ◆ Editing a phonebook entry

**1** In the phonebook list, select a contact → [Edit] → Edit each item → [Save]

## ◆ Deleting a phonebook entry

**1** In the phonebook list, select a contact to delete  
→  → [Delete] → [OK]

- In the phonebook list screen,  → Tap [Delete] to select and delete contacts. Tap [Select all] to delete all contacts.

## ◆ Creating a new group

**1** In the phonebook list, [Groups]

**2** At the bottom of the group list, [Add] → Set each item → [OK]

**Editing group** : In the group list, touch and hold a group → [Edit group] → Set each item → [OK]

**Deleting group** : In the group list, touch and hold a group → [Delete group] → [OK]

### ✓ INFORMATION

- You cannot edit/delete "All", "No group", "Favorites" and Google default groups.

## ◆ Registering a contact to a group

**1** In the phonebook list, [Groups]

**2** In the group list, touch and hold a contact → Drag & drop it to a group to be registered

**Canceling group setting** : In the group list, tap a group that a contact is registered → Touch and hold the contact → Drag & drop it to the registered group

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Registering group can be set only in docomo account and Google account.

## ◆ Communication

Incoming/Outgoing calls and sent/received SMS, sp-mode mail and SNS messages\* appear.

\* Displayed only when Cloud is ON and My SNS function is used.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook]

**2** [Communication]

**Changing display items** : [Disp. item] → Check items to be displayed → [OK]

## ◆ Timeline

Display the timeline of SNS·Blog by "Friends NEWS" function and "My SNS".

\* To display, start use of Cloud.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook]

**2** [Timeline]

**Changing display items** : [Disp. item] → Check items to be displayed → [OK]

## ◆ Displaying profile screen

### 1 Select a name in the phonebook list



- ① **Account icon**
- ② **Face shot and name**
- ③ **Group**
- ④ **Registered personal information**

Tap an item to send a call or email. Touch and hold to display the options.

- ⑤ **Favorites**  
Tap to add to "Favorites".
- ⑥ **SMS**  
Tap to send an SMS.
- ⑦ **Sending Koe-no-Takuhaibin**  
Tap to send a Koe-no-Takuhaibin.

### ■ Profile screen menu

Tap  on the profile screen to operate infrared communication, sharing, etc.

## ◆ Importing/Exporting phonebook entries

### 1 In the phonebook list, → [Others] → [Import/Export] → Select an item

**Import from SIM card** : Phone numbers and mail addresses are imported as "Others".

**Import from SD card** : Register to specified account. When there are multiple files, select a file to register.

**Export to SD card** : Save phonebook data (vCard file) except "My profile" to microSD card.

**Share phonebook data** : Send all phonebook data via Bluetooth or mail attachment.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- To share all phonebook data with another terminal, import/export data via infrared communication. →P152
- If an incoming call is received or other applications are activated while infrared communication, infrared communication is aborted.
- Even if all data is sent via infrared communication, some mobile terminals cannot receive "My profile".
- If you try to send all phonebook entries via Bluetooth communication to an i-mode terminal, data cannot be moved normally.
- Use SD card backup application to back up and restore phonebook data and other data all at once. For details, see "ドコモバックアップ (SDカードバックアップ) (docomo backup (SD card backup))". →P108

## ◆ My profile

---

You can check your own phone number. You can also register or edit your own information.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook]

**2** [My profile] → [Edit] → Set each item → [Save]

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- You can create your name card from My profile to exchange with the other party. To create or exchange name cards, you need to install Name card creator application. For installing Name card creator application, [My profile] → Tap [Create new] and follow the onscreen instructions.

# Mail/Browser

## sp-mode mail

You can send and receive mail using i-mode mail address (@docomo.ne.jp).

Pictograms and Deco-mail can be used, and automatic reception also is supported.

- For details on sp-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

### 1 From the Home screen, → [spモードメール (sp-mode mail)]

From here on, follow the onscreen instructions.

## SMS

You can send and receive text messages up to 70 two-byte characters long (up to 160 one-byte characters for only alphanumerics) addressed to a mobile phone number.

### ◆ Creating and sending SMS

1 From the Home screen,  → [Messaging] → 

2 [To] → Enter a mobile phone number

3 [Type message] → Enter a message → 

### ✓ INFORMATION

- SMS can be also sent to or received from the parties using overseas network operators. For countries and overseas network operators available, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- To send to users of overseas network operators, enter "+", "Country code" and then "the recipient mobile phone number". Alternatively, enter "010", "Country code" and "the recipient mobile phone number" to send messages. Enter a phone number without a leading "0", if any.

### ◆ When SMS is received

When SMS is received, the notification icon appears on the status bar. Open the Notification panel to check new SMS.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- If the terminal is initialized and an SMS is received right after rebooting, ringtone and vibrator may not work regardless of notification settings for SMS.
- SMS cannot be received when the terminal is low on memory. Delete unnecessary applications etc. to obtain memory space. → P76, 131

### ◆ Displaying sent/received SMS

1 From the Home screen,  → [Messaging]

2 Select a message thread

- Tap  to dial.

## ◆ Replying to SMS

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Messaging]
- 2 Select a message thread → [Type message] → Enter a message → 

## ◆ Forwarding SMS

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Messaging]
- 2 Select a message thread → Touch and hold SMS → [Forward]
- 3 [To] → Enter a mobile phone number → 

## ◆ Deleting SMS

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Messaging]
- 2 Select a message thread → Touch and hold SMS → [Delete] → [Delete]

### ✓ INFORMATION

---

- To delete a message thread, touch and hold a message thread →  → Tap [Delete].
- To delete all message threads, in the message thread screen,  → [Delete all threads] → Tap [Delete].

## ◆ Setting SMS

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Messaging] →  → [Settings]
- 2 Set each item
  - Delete old messages** : Set whether to delete old messages if the number of saved messages reaches upper limit.
  - Message limit** : Set the number of messages to save per thread.
  - Backup** : Copy messages between the terminal and a microSD card.
  - Delivery reports** : Set whether to require acknowledgement of receipt for a message to send each time.
  - Manage SIM card messages** : Manage messages saved on the docomo mini UIM card.
  - Message center number** : Set the message center number.
    - Making the setting is not necessary normally.
  - Notifications** : Set whether to show notification on the status bar when receiving a message.
  - Sound** : Set ringtone when receiving a message.
  - Vibrate** : Set vibration when receiving a message.
  - LED** : Set color of indicator LED when receiving a message.

## Email

Set mail accounts provided by mopera U or general providers to use Email.

### ◆ Setting Email account

- Obtain the information required for setting up the mail account from your service provider in advance.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Email]

**2** [Email address] → Enter a mail address →  
[Password] → Enter a password → [Next]

From here on, follow the onscreen instructions.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- If automatic setting of the mail account does not complete, tap [Manual setup] in Step 2, and manually enter the account settings.
- With some service providers, settings for "OP25B (Outbound Port 25 Blocking) : spam mail transmission blocking" are needed. For details, contact the service provider you are subscribed to.
- If you have already set a mail account and want to add on another mail account, on the mail list,  → Tap [Settings] → [ADD ACCOUNT].

### ◆ Creating and sending an email

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Email]

- If you have several mail accounts, tap account at the top of the screen to switch.

**2** 

**3** [To] → Enter an address

- To add a Cc or Bcc,  → Tap [Add Cc/Bcc].

**4** [Subject] → Enter a subject

**5** [Compose email] → Enter a message

- To attach a file,  → Tap [Attach file].

**6** 

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- If you do not set mail account, set following the onscreen instructions. → P65
- Email is handled as email from a PC. If the receiver sets rejection of emails from PCs, the email cannot be sent.

## ◆ Receiving/Displaying emails

---

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Email]

- If you have several mail accounts, tap account at the top of the screen to switch.  
If you tap the [Combined view], emails containing a mixture of emails for all mail accounts is displayed.  
Each of the mail accounts is distinguished by a color bar on the right of emails.

### 2 To refresh the inbox,

### 3 Select an email

#### ✓ INFORMATION

---

- If Inbox checking frequency and email notifications (→P67) in Account settings are set, notification icon appears on the status bar. Open the Notification panel and tap the notification to display an email.

## ◆ Replying to an email

---

### 1 Display an email

### 2

Replying all :  → [Reply all]

### 3 [Compose email] → Enter a message →

## ◆ Forwarding an email

---

### 1 Display an email → → [Forward] → [To] → Enter a mail address →

## ◆ Deleting emails

---

### 1 Display an email →

## ◆ Setting Email

---

Make Email settings.

### ❖ General settings for Email

---

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Email]

### 2 → [Settings]

### 3 [General] → Set each item

**Auto-advance** : Set screen to display after deleting a message.

**Message text size** : Set text size.

**Reply all** : Set whether to reply to all destinations when replying a mail each time.

**Ask to show pictures** : Do not show pictures in messages automatically.

## ❖ Setting Email account

---

- Available items vary depending on account type.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Email]

**2**  → [Settings]

**3** Select an account → Set each item

**Account name** : Edit account name.

**Your name** : Edit name.

**Signature** : Register signature.

**Quick responses** : Edit frequently inserting sentences when creating emails.

**Default account** : Set whether to give priority to the account when creating an email.

**Inbox check frequency** : Set check frequency for inbox.

**Number of days to sync email** : Set number of days for synchronizing mail.

**Number of days to sync calendar** : Set number of days for synchronizing calendar.

**Sync email** : Set whether to synchronize mail.

**Sync contacts** : Set whether to synchronize contacts.

**Sync Calendar** : Set whether to synchronize calendar.

**Download attachments** : Set whether to automatically download attachment file when connected to Wi-Fi.

**Allow auto-sync when roaming** : Set whether to synchronize automatically during the international roaming. The setting may not be changed depending on policy.

**Email notifications** : Set whether to show notification on the status bar when receiving an email.

**Choose ringtone** : Set ringtone when receiving an email.

**Vibrate** : Set vibration when receiving an email.

**Incoming settings** : Set incoming mail server.

**Outgoing settings** : Set outgoing mail server.

**Remove account** : Delete an account.

## ❖ Backing up/Restoring emails

---

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Email]

**2**  → [Settings]

**3** [Backup/Restore] → [Backup]/[Restore] → [Start] → [OK]

## Gmail

Gmail is a Google online email service. You can send and receive emails using Gmail on the terminal.

- To use Gmail, you need to set up a Google account on the terminal. If a Google account is not yet set, follow the onscreen instructions that are displayed when Gmail is activated for the first time.

### ◆ Displaying Gmail

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Gmail]

A list of message threads is displayed in the inbox.

- Tap  in the inbox to refresh by synchronizing Gmail on the terminal and Gmail on the website each other.

## Early warning "Area Mail"

This is a service with which you can receive emergency earthquake flash report delivered by the Meteorological Agency etc.

- Area Mail is a free service and subscription is not required.
- Up to 50 items can be saved.
- Area Mail cannot be received when the power off, in Airplane mode, while upgrading Android software (except for while downloading), while international roaming, while PIN lock screen is displayed, etc. When the terminal is low on memory, reception may fail.
- Unreceived Area Mail cannot be received later.

### ◆ When receiving Early warning "Area Mail"

When Area Mail is received, the buzzer alarm or the Area Mail ringtone sounds, the notification icon appears on the status bar, and the content screen is displayed.

- The buzzer alarm or the incoming ringtone sounds in maximum volume. The setting cannot be changed.
- By default, the sound is emitted even in Manner mode. You can set to disable the sound. → P68

### ◆ Displaying received Area Mail

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Disaster kit] → [Early Warning "Area Mail"] → Select an Area Mail

- For the first activation, read the "ご利用にあたって (Using this application)" and tap [Agree].

### ◆ Deleting Area Mail

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Disaster kit] → [Early Warning "Area Mail"]

- 2 Mark Area Mail → [Delete] → [OK]
  - To select all, tap [Select all].

### ◆ Setting Early warning "Area Mail"

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Disaster kit] → [Early Warning "Area Mail"] → → [Settings]

## 2 Set each item

**Receive setting** : Set whether to receive Area Mail.

**Beep tone** : Set sounding time of beep tone and action when Area Mail arrives in Manner mode.

**Check screen image and beep tone** : Check actual reception screen and beep tone for Area Mail such as Earthquake Early Warning, Tsunami Warning, Disaster/Evacuation information.

**Other settings** : Register/edit/delete Area Mail other than emergency earthquake flash report, tsunami warning, disaster/evacuation information to be received.

## Google Talk

Google Talk is an online instant message service provided by Google. You can enjoy chat with Google members by using Google Talk on the terminal.

- To use Google Talk, you need to set up a Google account on the terminal. If a Google account is not yet set, follow the onscreen instructions that are displayed when Google Talk is activated for the first time.

### ❖ Activating Google Talk

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Talk]

The Friends list is displayed.

- For details on Google Talk, in the Friend's list of Google Talk,  → [Help] to refer.

## Browser

You can view web pages like on a PC using Browser. On the terminal, Browser can be used over a packet communication or Wi-Fi connection.

### ◆ Operation while viewing website

#### ■ Switching web page in portrait/landscape view

Hold the terminal vertically or horizontally to switch the portrait/landscape view.

#### ■ Zooming in/out on web page

You can zoom in/out on web page by the following operations.

**Pinch-out/Pinch-in** : Zoom in/out.

**Double-tap** : Zoom in.

- To return to the view before it is zoomed in, double-tap again.

The current magnification ratio is kept when you open a web page next time. Tap the icon displayed when you zoom in/out a web page to valid (  )/invalid (  ) takeover of the magnification status.

#### ■ Scroll/Pan

Scroll the screen up/down or left/right or pan in all directions to display the desired part of the screen.

## ◆ Activating Browser to display a website

---

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Browser]

The preset home page is displayed.

- Slide the screen downward to display the top part of web page where you can enter URL in the address bar or keyword.

## ◆ Opening a new browser window

---

You can open 2 or more browser windows and switch web pages quickly.

### 1 When a web page is displayed, slide the screen downward to display the top of the screen →

### 2 [+]

A new browser window opens to display the preset home page.

**Switching** : Select browser window

**Closing** : [X] on the browser window

## ◆ Displaying website in incognito tab

---

You can browse web pages without history of the browser or search left.

### 1 When a web page is displayed, slide the screen downward to display the top of the screen →

### 2 → [New incognito tab] → Enter URL/keyword in the address bar and operate

-  appears at the top of the screen while a window opens in incognito tab.

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Web pages opened in incognito tab are not left in the history. If you close the incognito tab, any record such as Cookie is also cleared. However, downloaded files or web page added to bookmarks is saved.

## ◆ Displaying web page from history

---

### 1 When a web page is displayed, → [Bookmarks] → [HISTORY]

- To display the history of frequently viewed web pages, tap [Most visited].

### 2 Select a history of the web page

## ◆ Saving and displaying web page

---

Save currently displayed web page to view offline.

### ◆ Saving web page

---

### 1 When a web page is displayed, → [Save for offline reading]

## ❖ Viewing saved web page

---

**1** When a web page is displayed,  → [Bookmarks] → [SAVED PAGES]

**2** Select a saved page

**Deleting** : Touch and hold saved page → [Delete saved page]

-  appears at the top of the window while a saved page is displayed.

## ❖ Registering a bookmark to quickly display a web page

---

### ❖ Registering a bookmark

---

**1** When a web page is displayed,  → [Save to bookmarks]

Detailed information for bookmark is displayed.

**2** [OK]

### ❖ Displaying web pages from bookmarks

---

**1** When a web page is displayed,  → [Bookmarks]

**2** Select a bookmark

**Editing** : Touch and hold a bookmark → [Edit bookmark] → Set required items → [OK]

**Deleting** : Touch and hold a bookmark → [Delete bookmark] → [OK]

## ◆ Prefetch Cache

---

Dedicated cache fetches a linked page for displayed web page. If prefetched in cache, tapping the link opens linked page quickly, regardless of conditions of communication lines.

- Depending on linked page, this feature may not be available.

**1** When a web page is displayed, slide the screen downward to display the top of the screen →  → [Yes]

- The notification icon appears on the status bar.
- If you open Notification panel while prefetching and tap [~% prefetch], prefetch stops.

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Some pages cannot be displayed correctly when viewing prefetched links.
- Prefetch caches are cleared in the following cases.
  - When starting prefetching
  - When exiting browser
  - When clearing caches from browser setting
  - When prefetching again
- Prefetch function performs communication until linked pages are acquired. Therefore packet communication charges may become high. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- Prefetch function cannot be used while incognito tab is displayed.

## ◆ Web page link operations

---

Operate a link displayed on a web page.

### URL

- Tap a web page to open.
- Touch and hold a web page to open in a new tab, to save link, or copy link.

### Email address

- Tap to create a mail.
- Touch and hold to copy mail address.

### Phone number

- Tap to make a call to a phone number.
- Touch and hold to add or copy a phone number to Contacts.

### File

- Tap to view/save a file.
- Touch and hold a file to save.

## ✓INFORMATION

---

- You can check a saved file with Document Viewer.

## ◆ Saving images displayed on a web page

---

### 1 When a web page is displayed, select an image (touch and hold)→[Save image]

- You can check a saved image in Gallery (→P99).

## ◆ Searching words on websites in dictionary

---

Search words on a website in a dictionary.

- Set [Display balloon] in [General] of browser setting to use.  
→P73

### 1 When a web page is displayed, touch and hold text

Selected text is highlighted.

- Slide knobs on the both end of text range to adjust selected range.

### 2 Tap a balloon

Search results are listed.

- If no matching words are found, no balloon appears.

### 3 Tap a word you want to check

## ◆ Setting Browser

**1** When a web page is displayed,  → [Settings] → [General]/[Privacy & security]/[Accessibility]/[Advanced]/[Bandwidth management]/[Labs]

### **2** Set each item

**General** : Set home page displayed when Browser is activated, downloaded file saving location, filling forms automatically, entering texts automatically, or searching in dictionary.

**Privacy & security** : Set cache, deleting browser history, displaying/hiding alert screen, Cookie, form data, current location information or password.

**Accessibility** : Set overwriting zoom in/zoom out settings, text size, or reversal rendering of the screen.

- [Contrast] can be adjusted when [Inverted rendering] is marked.

**Advanced** : Set search engine, Open in background, Enable JavaScript, Allow multiple tabs per app, Enable plug-ins, website settings, Prefetch priority, PAGE CONTENT or Reset to default can be set.

- If [Prefetch priority] in PREFETCH is marked, action for JavaScript in a prefetched page and new communication, refreshing information are partly restricted. In this reason, pages may not be displayed correctly. [Prefetch priority] is enabled when only 1 tab is displayed in browser.

- When [Auto-fit pages] is marked, displayed texts or other items in the web page are automatically optimized for the screen.  
Double-tap a line of text to fit in the width of the screen for displaying.

**Bandwidth management** : Set Search result preloading, Web page preloading and Load images.

**Labs** : Set Disaster/Evacuation information or Fullscreen.

# Applications

## dmenu

In dmenu, you can easily access sites recommended by DOCOMO or convenient applications.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [dmenu]

Browser activates and "dmenu" appears.

- Alternatively, by default, from the Home screen, tap [dmenu].

### ✓INFORMATION

- To use dmenu, Internet connection by packet communication (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi is required.
- For connecting dmenu and downloading applications introduced in dmenu, packet communication charge is applied separately. Some downloaded applications automatically perform packet communications.
- Applications introduced by dmenu may include charged ones.

## dmarket

You can obtain useful and interesting contents which meet your needs at dmarket.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [dmarket]

Top screen of dmarket appears.

- Alternatively, by default, from the Home screen, tap [dmarket].
- When the first activation for dmarket application appears, mark [Agree] on "dマーケットソフトウェア使用許諾契約書 (Terms of service for dmarket software) and tap [Start use].
- For details on dmarket, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

## Play Store

With Play Store, you can access to Google Play to search convenient applications or fun games which you can download and install on the terminal. Also, movie contents can be rented to view.

- To use Google Play, you need to set up a Google account on the terminal. If a Google account is not yet set, follow the onscreen instructions that are displayed when Google Play is activated for the first time.

## ◆ Installing application

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Play Store]

Google Play screen appears.

- For the first activation, read the terms of service and tap [Accept].

### 2 Search an application → Select an application

### 3 [INSTALL] (for free application)/[Price] (for paid application)

- Displayed items differ depending on the application.
- If the application needs to access the data or functions of the terminal, functions to be used by that application are indicated on the screen.

Be careful about installing applications that access lots of functions or a significant amount of data. Once you select [Accept] in this screen, you are responsible for the consequences of using this application on the terminal. To agree to the terms of use of the application, tap [ACCEPT]. For a paid application, if you did not set payment method, tap [CONTINUE] to set payment method and then tap [ACCEPT] at the end.

- Use Google wallet to buy charged applications. Follow the onscreen instructions to set a payment method. You can request a refund within specified period after the purchase (refund is available only once for each application). For details on billing for application or canceling, on the Google Play screen,  → [Help] to refer.

## 4 Check the download progress

When installation is completed,  appears on the status bar.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Be sure to check the security of application, then install it at your own risk. The terminal may be infected with a virus and the data may be damaged.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for malfunctions, if any, caused by the application you installed. In such case, the repair is charged even during the warranty period.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any disadvantage brought to you or any third party due to an application you installed.
- Some applications automatically connect to the Internet and perform communications. Note that packet communications charged may be higher.
- The icon of the installed application appears in the application list screen.
- Installed accessibility plug-ins can be enabled in the accessibility service list screen. →P148

## ◆ Deleting Google Play application

---

**1** On the Google Play screen,  → [My apps]

**2** Select an application

**3** [UNINSTALL] → [OK]

- When [REFUND] is not displayed for charged applications, this means that the free trial period has ended.

## ◆ Help of Google Play

---

**1** On the Google Play screen,  → [Help]

## Osaifu-Keitai

You can use Osaifu-Keitai service which allows you to pay money or to use coupon only by holding the terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc. and "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)" which allows you to access information by holding the terminal over a home appliance, a poster, etc.

You can save electronic money or point value in IC card or docomo mini UIM card.

In addition, you can charge electronic money, check the balance and points, etc. via network. In addition, you can lock your Osaifu-Keitai to provide against loss or theft, and you can use it with safe.

- A setting from the dedicated website or application is required to use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services.

- For details on Osaifu-keitai, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

## ◆ iC transfer service

---

The iC transfer service is a service which helps you transfer all data in the IC card for Osaifu-Keitai to your new Osaifu-Keitai when you change Osaifu-Keitai for repair, changing of the model. Data in docomo mini UIM card remains even after you use iC transfer service.

Visit a sales outlet such as docomo Shop to use the iC transfer service.

- For details on the iC transfer service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

## ◆ Precautions on using Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal

---

- Data in the IC card<sup>\*1</sup> and in the docomo mini UIM card<sup>\*2</sup> may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of the terminal (when we repair your terminal etc., as we cannot repair it with Osaifu-Keitai data remained, you are required to erase the data yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data, contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service providers. For important data, be sure to use an Osaifu-Keitai compatible service with backup service.

\*1 Data saved in IC card installed to Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal (including electronic money or point value)

\*2 Data saved in docomo mini UIM card (including electronic money and point value, except for phonebook data and SMS data)

- If the data in the IC card and docomo mini UIM card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If the terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.

## ◆ Using "Osaifu-Keitai service"

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Osaifu-keitai]

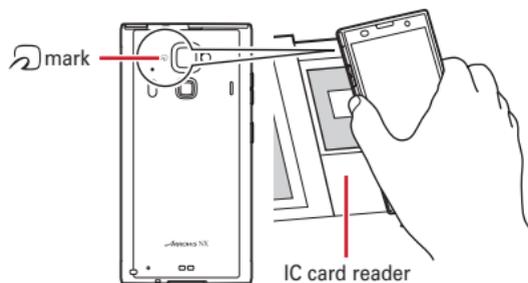
- If the initial setting has not yet made, the initial setting screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions to set.

### 2 Select a service

### 3 Set up the service

- Make the required settings from the service site or application.

### 4 Hold mark over a card reader



## ✓INFORMATION -----

- When reading/writing data, you need not activate Osaifu-Keitai application.
- Powering on the terminal is not necessary, but if the terminal remains powered off for a long time or battery is low, the function may not available.
- For non-subscriber to sp-mode, a part of Osaifu-Keitai service may not be available.

## ◆ Using "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)"

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings]

- If [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai] is marked, unmark the checkbox.

### 2 Mark [Reader/Writer, P2P]

### 3 Hold mark over a device equipped an NFC module, a smart poster, etc.

- In addition, you can exchange information between terminals using Android Beam. →P157

## ◆ Notes when holding the terminal over a card reader, NFC module equipped device, etc.

- Be careful not to hit the terminal when holding  mark over a compatible device.
- Hold  mark horizontally over the center of the compatible device.
- Slowly put the terminal close to a compatible device when holding  mark.
- If  mark cannot be scanned even with it held in front of the center of the scanner, slightly lift up the terminal, or move it backwards/forwards or to the left/right. When holding the terminal to the scanner, note that  mark is not in the center of the terminal, but near the left of camera.
-  mark sometimes cannot be scanned if there is a metal object between the mark and a compatible device. Also, note that putting the terminal in a case or covering the terminal might affect communication performance.

## ◆ Locking Osaifu-Keitai function

Lock the Osaifu-Keitai function not to allow others to use Osaifu-Keitai services or acquire data from scanners.

- Osaifu-Keitai lock is different from screen lock authentication or SIM card lock.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Osaifu-Keitai]

**2** [Lock Settings]

- For the first time, setting a password is required. Follow the onscreen instructions to set a password.

**3** [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai] → Authenticate

Using fingerprint authentication : [Use fingerprint authentication] → Authenticate

- To use fingerprint authentication, make fingerprint settings as security unlock preference in advance. → P135

## ✓ INFORMATION

- When you use "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai",  or  appears on the status bar.
- Be careful about remaining battery level because canceling "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai" becomes unavailable when the battery runs down while "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai" is set. When the battery runs down, charge the terminal before canceling "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai".
- To use Osaifu-Keitai menu while "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai" is set, cancel "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai".
- A lock password for NFC/Osaifu-Keitai cannot be erased even if you reset the terminal.
- When canceling Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai, perform using the docomo UIM card that is used when Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai is performed.

## ◆ Canceling Osaifu-Keitai lock

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Osaifu-Keitai]

**2** [Lock Settings]

**3** [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai] → Authenticate

## ◆ iDアプリ (iD application)

---

"iD" is a convenient electronic money by credit clearance scheme. You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently only by holding Osaifu-Keitai with credit information set or the iD-compatible card over the IC card reader in stores. Because up to 2 types of credit information can be registered in Osaifu-Keitai, you can use them according to the benefits, etc. It also supports cashing, depending on the card issuer.

- To use "iD" with Osaifu-Keitai, subscribing to a card issuer that supports iD, settings for iD application are required.
- The charges required for iD service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- A packet communication fee for overseas use differs from the one in Japan.
- For details on iD, refer to iD website (<http://id-credit.com/> (in Japanese only)).

## ◆ ToruCa

---

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained to mobile terminals. It can be obtained from the IC card reader or site as store information, coupon ticket, etc. Obtained ToruCa is saved to the [ToruCa] application. Use the [ToruCa] application to display, search or update.

- For details on ToruCa, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

## ✓INFORMATION

---

- For obtaining, displaying or updating ToruCa, a packet communication charge may be applied.
- Some ToruCa provided to i-mode terminal may not be obtained/displayed/updated.
- Depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider), the following functions may not be available.  
Obtaining, updating from the IC card reader, sharing ToruCa, moving/copying to microSD card, displaying map
- Some ToruCa which can be displayed in a map from ToruCa (details) may not be displayed in a map from the ToruCa list depending on the IP settings.
- While NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is activated, you cannot obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader.
- If you mark 重複チェック (Duplication check), obtaining the same ToruCa as the saved one from a scanner redundantly is not available. To obtain the same ToruCa redundantly, unmark the checkbox.
- When you send ToruCa attaching to email, it is sent in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- Depending on email application, ToruCa received via the emails may not be saved.
- Depending on browser, ToruCa cannot be obtained.
- When ToruCa is moved/copied to the microSD card, it is moved/copied in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- You may not be able to obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader, if you do not make initial setting for Osaifu-Keitai.

## Mobacas

**Mobacas is a broadcasting service for smartphones. You can use 2 watching styles : "Real Time" (broadcasting in real time style) that allows you to watch programs in real time and "Shift Time" (broadcasting in storage style) that allows you to enjoy comic, novels, music, games, etc. as well as movies and dramas anytime and anywhere. Also, you can enjoy new broadcasting services including social service collaborated services using the communication function of the terminal.**

- For details on Mobacas, refer to the Mobacas broadcast station (NOTTV) website.

NOTTV <http://www.nottv.jp/> (In Japanese only)

### ■ Using Mobacas

- A separate pay-TV subscription to the Mobacas broadcast station (NOTTV) is required to use Mobacas.
- You cannot receive and watch broadcasts without the docomo mini UIM card being attached the terminal.
- Mobacas is a broadcasting service provided in Japan.
- Using Shift Time mode or recording requires sufficient memory on microSD card or the phone. Using microSD card in Class 4 or higher is recommended. (Selecting storage can be set.)
- For MHL connection which allows you to view Mobacas on a TV screen, see "Displaying on a TV via MHL connection". → P162

### ■ Broadcast wave and service area

The radio wave received via Mobacas differs from that of received via Xi/FOMA service and Full Seg/1Seg. For this reason, the signal cannot be received at places where the Mobacas broadcast does not reach or while broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the terminal is outside or inside the Xi/FOMA service area.

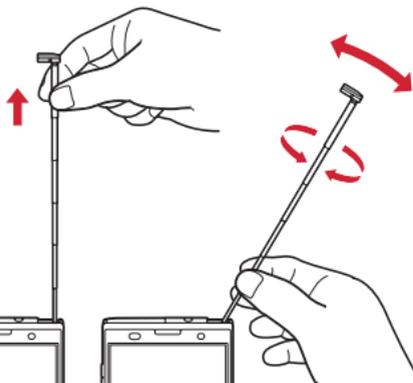
Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the terminal is inside the area of Mobacas broadcasting service.

- Places that are far from the base station that sends signal
- Places where the signal is disrupted due to the landscaper or structures such as mountain areas or behind buildings
- Places where the signal is weak or does not reach, such as tunnels, basements, or places inside buildings
- When displaying on the TV by MHL connection, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the terminal is inside the area of Mobacas broadcasting service.

### ■ TV/FM transmitter antenna

When you watch Mobacas or TV (Full Seg/1Seg), TV/FM transmitter antenna receives signal.

- Fully extend the TV/FM transmitter antenna.
- To change direction of the TV/FM transmitter antenna, hold around the root of the TV/FM transmitter antenna. Do not perform forcibly.



- To house the TV/FM transmitter antenna, hold the root of the TV/FM transmitter antenna and install until it stops. Do not slide down the TV/FM transmitter antenna holding its top.

### ■ Improving reception status

- Fully extending the TV/FM transmitter antenna and changing its direction or moving to other place may improve signal reception.
- Optional Earphone adapter cable with antenna SH01 can be functioned as an antenna by connecting to the external connection jack of the terminal. Changing the direction of the cable or turning away from a person may improve signal reception.

## ◆ Watching Mobacas

---

### ❖ Watching programs/contents

---

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [NOTTV]

NOTTV home screen appears.

- For the first activation, read the terms of service and tap [同意する (Agree)] to make initial settings automatically.
- Make initial settings under a good communication condition.

#### 2 Tap a thumbnail of programs/contents displayed on the home screen

- When you watch in the Real Time mode, flick left or right to switch channels.
- Turn the terminal sideways or tap full-view screen button on upper right on the screen to switch screen display.
- : Adjust volume
- Tap  → [設定 (Settings)] → [表示・音声 (Display/Audio)] to set subtitles and sound.
- Buttons at the bottom of the screen switch screen contents.

**ホーム (Home) button** : Return to the Home screen.

**データ (Data) button** : Show data broadcast.

**ソーシャル (Social) button** : Display a timeline related to programs/contents.

**インフォ (Info) button** : Show program information.

**番組表 (Program guide) button** : Show program guide.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- Displayed content varies depending on the program/content.
- Video can be played back using the video correction engine by marking [Video correction]. → P128
- Since Mobacas content is prohibited from copying, capturing watching content or screen is not available.

## ◆ Searching programs/contents

---

You can search programs/contents in the application by various methods.

### ❖ Searching from program guide (Real Time)

---

#### 1 On the NOTTV home screen, [番組表 (Program guide)]

Real time program guide appears.

- Tap [シフトタイム (Shift Time)] to show Shift Time program guide.

#### 2 Tap a program

Select a program currently being broadcast to switch to the watching screen.

## ❖ Searching by specifying conditions

---

- 1 On the NOTTV home screen,  [検索・ジャンル別 (Search/By category)]
- 2 Enter a keyword to search or tap a category you want to search
- 3 Tap a program/content

## ◆ Scheduling programs/contents

---

### ❖ Scheduling Shift Time reception

---

- 1 On the NOTTV home screen, [番組表 (Program guide)]
- 2 [シフトタイム (Shift Time)]  
A list of programs/contents that will be broadcast appears.
- 3 Tap a program/content  
The program/contents information screen appears.
- 4 [予約する (Reserve)]

## ✓INFORMATION -----

- Programs/Contents may not be received in the following cases : when the terminal is off while a program/content is broadcast, when the battery is low, when the terminal is in a poor reception area such as out of the Mobacas service area etc., when microSD card is not inserted, when available memory space on the microSD card/phone is low.
- Programs/Contents temporarily saved in the microSD card or phone memory can be watched/used only on the terminal.
- When expiration date has passed for programs/contents, they are automatically deleted from the microSD card or phone memory. You can also delete programs/contents manually before the expiration date.
- Programs/Contents may be automatically reserved even when you have not reserved. (シフトタイムの自動予約 (Automatic schedule for Shift Time))
- You can disable automatic schedule for Shift Time.
- When contents are not completely received because of the reception status of broadcast wave etc., data is automatically complemented using packet communication. (シフトタイムの自動補完 (Auto contents complement for Shift Time))
- You can disable auto contents complement for Shift Time.

## ❖ Reserving watching/recording for Real Time

- 1 On the NOTTV home screen, [番組表 (Program guide)]
- 2 Tap a program  
The program information screen appears.
- 3 [視聴予約する (Reserve watching)]/[録画予約する (Reserve recording)]
  - You can also record current watching program manually.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Programs may not be watched/recorded in the following cases : when the terminal is off while a program is broadcast, when the battery is low, when the terminal is in a poor reception area such as out of the Mobacas service area etc., when microSD card is not inserted, when available memory space on the microSD card/phone is low.
- Recorded programs in the microSD card or phone memory can be watched only on the terminal in use.
- Some programs may not be recorded.

## ◆ Mobacas settings

- 1 On the NOTTV home screen,  → [設定 (Settings)]
- 2 Set each item
  - 表示・音声 (Display/Audio)
    - 字幕表示 (Display subtitle) : Set whether to display subtitles.
    - 文字スーパー表示 (Telop display) : Set whether to display telops.
    - 音声 (Audio) : Set an audio language and main/sub audio channel.
    - バックグラウンド再生 (Background play) : Set whether to keep playing in background after the application screen is closed.
  - 自動処理 (Auto process)
    - シフトタイムの自動予約 (Automatic schedule for Shift Time) : Enable/disable automatic reception of programs/contents.
    - おすすめのリセット (Reset recommendation) : Reset information used to automatically receive recommended programs/contents.
    - 番組情報取得 (Acquire program information) : Set the time when information of the programs/contents list is acquired via broadcast.
    - シフトタイムの自動補完 (Auto contents complement for Shift Time) : Set whether to automatically complement data using packet communication when contents are not completely received because of the reception status of broadcast wave etc.

**利用ログ送信 (Send log)** : Set whether to send logs of watching broadcasting in real time style, playing/using broadcasting in storage style, operations on applications, etc.

**自動ライセンス取得 (Auto license acquisition)** : Set whether to automatically acquire licenses of contents.

**ペアレンタルコントロール (Parental control)** : Restrict usage of programs/contents according to age.

### ブラウザ (Browser)

**Cookie** : Set ON/OFF on whether to permit saving Cookie.

**Cookieを削除 (Clear Cookie)** : Delete saved Cookie.

**放送保存領域消去 (Delete broadcast saving area)** : Delete saving area for received broadcast data.

**データ放送表示 (Display data broadcasting)** : Set whether to display data broadcasting area for the watching screen.

**再読込 (Reload)** : Reload content when playing content including data information except for video (program information etc.) for Shift Time.

**文字コード変換 (Character code conversion)** : Convert to character code JIS, UTF-8, etc. when playing content including data information except for video (program information etc.) for Shift Time.

### 履歴 (History)

Reception result of programs/contents or auto-deletion history of programs/contents appears.

### ストレージ選択 (Select storage)

Select a temporarily saving location for Shift Time programs/contents or saving location for recorded data from [本体 (Terminal)]/[SDカード (SD card)]. If you change a saving location, data is transferred.

### ステータスバー (Status bar)

**放送中番組を表示 (Display on-air programs)** : Enable/disable to display on-air programs on the status bar.

### シリーズ・キーワード予約 (Reserve by series/keyword)

**重複録画防止 (Prevent duplicative recording)** : Set ON/OFF for preventing recording the same contents.

### ソーシャル (Social)

**Twitter連携解除 (Cancel Twitter link)** : Cancel Twitter link.

### 機種変更 (Change model)

Make necessary settings in case of model change.

## TV (Full Seg/1Seg)

TV is an application for watching programs switching between Full Seg and 1Seg according to reception of signals. In Full Seg, you can watch a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service with high-definition quality.

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices, and can receive data broadcasts with image and voice. You can also use interactive services using communication function of mobile devices and detail information via communication.

For details on the "1Seg/Full Seg" service, check the following website.

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting  
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>

## ◆ Using Full Seg/1Seg

- Full Seg/1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations), etc. Transmission charges are not incurred for receiving images, voice and sound. For details on NHK viewing fees, contact NHK.
- When watching Full Seg, reception of data broadcasting is not available.
- You can operate recording while watching a program in Full Seg, but the recorded data is a watching data for 1Seg. Reserving recording is only available for 1Seg.
- Available information in the area of data broadcasting for 1Seg watching is "data broadcasting" and "data broadcast site" information.  
"Data broadcasting" information is carried in a broadcast, together with images, voice and sound, and "data broadcasting site" information is used to access sites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). Packet communication charge is applied when accessing a site such as a "data broadcasting site" or others. Some sites require information charges to be used.

## ◆ About signal

Full Seg/1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and the receiving signal (broadcast) differs from that of the Xi/FOMA service. For this reason, the signal cannot be received at places where the broadcast does not reach or while broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the terminal is outside or inside the Xi/FOMA service area.

Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the terminal is inside the area of a terrestrial TV broadcasting service.

- Places that are far from the broadcast transmission tower

- Places where the signal is disrupted due to the landscaper or structures such as mountain areas or behind buildings
- Places where the signal is weak or does not reach, such as tunnels, basements, or places inside buildings

Fully extending the TV/FM transmitter antenna and changing its direction or moving to other place may improve signal reception. →P81

## ◆ Activating TV

### 1 From the Home screen, → [TV]

TV watching screen appears.

- When you activate 1Seg for the first time, read the terms of use, tap [同意する (Accept)] and create a channel list corresponding to the watching area. →P91
- By default, watching mode for Full Seg/1Seg is set to [自動切替 (Auto switch)] To switch the watching mode, on the TV watching screen, tap  and select [ワンセグ (1Seg)]/[自動切替 (Auto switch)]/[フルセグ (Full Seg)] in the watching controller. You can check the current watching mode while watching by  (gray : 1Seg)/  (blue : Full Seg) icon on the status bar. When [自動切替 (Auto switch)] is set, 1Seg/Full Seg can be switched automatically depending on signal condition.
- If the terminal returns to the Home screen or goes into the sleep mode while receiving TV program, only sound of TV comes out with Background play function. To end Background play, return to the TV watching screen, double-tap  or tap  → [テレビ終了 (End TV)] to end TV. Background play ends after 2 hours elapses.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- The minimum battery power to start is 5 %, the minimum battery power to continue operating is 2 %.
- It may take a time to acquire image data or broadcasted data when you activate TV or change channels due to characteristic of digital broadcasting.
- Depending on the airwave condition, video images or sounds may be interrupted or stopped.
- Video can be played back using the video correction engine by marking [Video correction] when watching in 1Seg. → P128
- Since TV content is prohibited from copying, capturing watching content or screenshot is not available.

## ❖ TV screen



TV watching screen

### ① TV watching area

- Flick left or right to start channel selection.
- In horizontal screen, you can switch showing/hiding the watching controller and navigation bar by tapping the TV watching area.

- The display can be switched between vertical/horizontal screens according to orientation of the terminal. To fix orientation of displaying vertical/horizontal screen, Tap → [画面の自動回転OFF (Auto-rotate screen OFF)].

### ② Control bar

- Tap the icon (blue) to switch the display in the operation panel area. From the left, (Data broadcasting), (Channel list), (Program table), (Twitter link) and (Watching controller) are displayed.
- The control bar cannot be displayed in horizontal screen.

### ③ Operation panel area

- Displayed contents can be switched by tapping each icon on the control bar.
- Tap when watching 1Seg to display data broadcasting. You can move the cursor position in the data broadcasting with operation icon that is displayed at the bottom of the operation panel area.

### ④ Navigation bar

### ⑤ Switching channels

- Touch and hold to start channel search.  
When unregistered broadcasting station is found by the channel search, → [チャンネル設定 (Channel setting)] → [チャンネル追加 (Add channel)] → [[はい (Yes)]] to add to the channel list.

### ⑥ Recording button

→ P89

### ⑦ Switching 1Seg/Auto-switch/Full Seg

### ⑧ Volume adjustment bar

- Drag left and right to adjust volume.
- Tap [消音 (Mute)] at the left on the volume adjusting bar to mute sound.

: Adjust volume

(1 sec. or more) : Switch channels

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Since the screen view turns to full screen mode when the terminal turns sideways, navigation bar shown at the bottom of the screen in vertical screen mode does not appear in the horizontal screen mode. Tap the screen to show navigation bar with the watching controller at the right of the screen.

## ◆ Ending TV

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [テレビ終了 (End TV)]

## ◆ TV link

For some data broadcasting programs, link information to related websites (TV link) is displayed. Save TV links to display related websites directly.

## ❖ Registering TV link

- 1 Select an item that can be registered as a TV link in the data broadcast area

- Procedure to save TV link varies by the program.

## ❖ Displaying TV link

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [TVリンク (TV link)] → Select TV link

Connect to the saved website.

## ❖ Deleting TV link

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [TVリンク (TV link)]

- 2 Touch and hold a TV link →  → [OK]

**Deleting all TV links:** Touch and hold a TV link →  → [すべて選択 (Select all)] →  → [OK]

**Selecting and deleting TV links:** Tap more than one to select →  → [OK]

## ◆ Using Twitter

You can activate Twitter while watching TV to view the timeline or post tweet.

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  Twitter screen appears in the operation panel area.

## ◆ Reserving watching/recording

You can reserve watching or recording TV programs.

- Reserving recording in Full Seg is not available.

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [予約一覧 (Reservation list)]

A reservation list appears.

- 2 [+ ] → [番組表から予約 (Reserve from program table)]/[手動で予約 (Reserve manually)]

- 3 Set required items → [保存 (Save)]

## ✓ INFORMATION

- When reserved time arrives,  and a reservation notification appears on the status bar to notify you of the reservation according to the time set in scheduled alarm setting.
- If you turn the terminal OFF, the schedule will not be executed.
- If a timer recording time arrives while you record another program manually, the current recording is terminated and then the timer recording will be started.

## ❖ Checking reservation

Check your reservation.

### 1 On the TV watching screen, → [予約一覧 (Reservation list)]

A reservation list appears.

### 2 Tap a reserved item

## ✓ INFORMATION

- You can operate  (Edit)/  (Delete) when touching and holding a reservation on the reservation list.

## ❖ Checking programs set for timer recording

Check the result of timer recording.

### 1 On the TV watching screen, → [予約一覧 (Reservation list)] → [録画予約結果 (Recording reservation result)]

A reservation result list appears.

### 2 Tap a reserved item

- To delete a reserved program, touch and hold a reserved item →  → Tap [OK]. To delete all reserved programs, tap  → [すべて選択 (Select all)] →  → [OK].

## ❖ Recording a program

You can record image, sound, subtitle and data broadcasting you are watching and save on a microSD card.

- Recording is not available in Full Seg. Recording program on Full Seg watching screen is 1Seg recording.

### 1 On the watching controller screen, slide to the left to start recording

Recording starts.

- Watching controller screen → P87

### 2 Slide right to end recording

Recording ends.

## ✓INFORMATION

- Use a microSD card formatted on the terminal in advance.
- To start recording, 10 MB or more memory space of the microSD card and 20% or more remaining battery are required.
- If the following occurs while recording, recording automatically stops.
  - The remaining memory of the microSD card is 2 MB or less
  - Remaining battery is 10% or less
  - 6 hours have elapsed since the recording started
- Recorded TV programs are saved as copyrighted data. It cannot be attached to mail.
- You cannot stop recording when recording time is extremely short (10 seconds or less).
- Record programs in a place where airwave condition is stable. A program may not be recorded in a place where the reception condition is unstable.
- While recording, you cannot change channel.
- While you use heavy load functions such as recording and MTP transmission at the same time, the recording may not be performed normally.
- If you use data communication services while recording, the recording may not be performed normally because TV signal condition becomes poor.
- If you record a paid broadcast, copy-controlled program or when you move to a different broadcast area, recording may end halfway.

## ❖ Playing recorded program

### 1 On the TV watching screen, → [録画一覧 (Record list)]

### 2 Select data

- If playback ended halfway in the previous session, playback resumes from where it left off.
- Tap  in vertical screen or tap the play screen in horizontal screen to display the play controller.  
(From left)
  -  : 5 seconds rewinding
  -  : Fast-rewinding (switched x2 fast rewinding/x10 fast-rewinding by each tap)
  -  : Pause
  -  : Fast-forwarding (switched x1.5 speed play/x2 fast forward/x10 fast-forward by each tap)
  -  : 15 seconds forwarding

## ✓INFORMATION

- You can display program information or change title name by touching and holding data on the recording list → Tap .  
Also, on the recording list screen, touch and hold data →  → [すべて選択 (Select all)] →  → Tap [OK] to delete all data.

## ◆ TV settings

---

1 On the TV watching screen,  → [設定 (Settings)]

### 2 Set required items

文字スーパー設定 (Subtitle setting) : Set showing/hiding of subtitle in Full Seg.

データ放送設定 (Data broadcasting setting) : Make each settings (check connection when communication/location information/usage of serial number/initialize memory for broadcasting station) when data broadcasting is displayed on the operation panel.

アラーム設定 (Alarm setting) : Set alarm sound or alarm time for starting reserved programs.

オフタイマー設定 (Off-timer setting) : Set time until TV is turned off (OFF/15分 (15 min.)/30分 (30 min.)/60分 (60 min.)/90分 (90 min.)/120分 (120 min.)).

なめらかモード (Smooth mode) : Smooth video movement (available only for 1Seg). Marking [なめらかモード (Smooth mode)] checkbox increases battery consumption and shortens the available watching time.

長時間モード (Long time mode) : Set for reducing battery consumption to watch 1Seg for a long time.

再生情報表示 (Display information when playing) : Display information when playing recorded program.

Twitter設定 (Twitter setting) : Clear all cache contents.

CAS情報の初期化 (Initialize CAS information) : Initialize information recorded when receiving Full Seg programs.

製品情報 (Product information) : Display version of this application.

## ❖ Setting for image/audio/subtitle

---

1 On the TV watching screen,  → [映像 / 音声 / 字幕設定 (Set image/audio/subtitle)]

### 2 Set required items

音声多重切替 (Switch sound-multicomplex) : Set from [主音声 (Main sound)]/[副音声 (Sub sound)]/[主+副音声 (Main + Sub sound)] for listening.

字幕切替 (Switch subtitle) : Select subtitle display from [表示しない (Not display)]/[字幕1 (Subtitle 1)]/[字幕2 (Subtitle 2)].

## ◆ Setting the channel

---

### ❖ Creating channel list

---

1 On the TV watching screen,  → [チャンネル設定 (Channel setting)] → [チャンネルリスト編集 (Edit channel list)] → [新規作成 (Create new)]

2 [地域を選択してスキャン (Select area and scan)]/[受信チャンネルをスキャン (Scan received channels)] → [保存 (Save)]

地域を選択してスキャン (Select area and scan) : Scan channels allocated to each area.

受信チャンネルをスキャン (Scan received channels) : Scan receivable channels in the current location.

## ❖ Switching channel lists

---

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [チャンネル設定 (Channel setting)] → [チャンネルリスト切替 (Switch channel list)] → Select channel list

## ❖ Deleting channel list

---

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [チャンネル設定 (Channel setting)] → [チャンネルリスト編集 (Edit channel list)]

- 2 Touch and hold a channel list →  → [OK]

## ❖ Changing channel buttons allocation

---

- 1 On the TV watching screen,  → [チャンネル設定 (Channel setting)] → [チャンネルリスト編集 (Edit channel list)]

- 2 Select a channel list → Tap a channel to change

- 3 Tap a broadcasting station name to replace → [保存 (Save)]

## ◆ Playing digital terrestrial broadcasting program

---

You can play digital terrestrial broadcasting programs in microSD card written with other device such as HDD recorder etc. at home in VGA class image quality (Digital terrestrial broadcasting taking out).

- Depending on the device which wrote, written files may not be played back.

- 1 Recording a digital terrestrial broadcasting program to microSD card

- 2 Insert a microSD card to the terminal

- 3 On the TV watching screen,  → [録画一覧 (Recording list)]

- 4 Select a digital terrestrial broadcasting program

- Tap the playback screen to show playback controller which allows you to play/pause/fast-forward/fast-rewind, etc.

### ✓INFORMATION

---

- To record a digital terrestrial broadcasting program to a microSD card, use optional SD memory card conversion adapter etc.

## Camera

### ◆ Cautions on shooting

- Although the camera is manufactured using extremely high-precision technology, it may contain dots or lines that are always lit or that do not light. When shooting under low light conditions, in particular, white lines or random color dots are likely to appear as noises. This is not a malfunction.
- When activating the camera, white stripes may appear on the screen. This is not a malfunction.
- When the terminal is in high temperature state for a long time, the camera may not be available. Wait until the terminal cools down to use again.
- When the battery is low, the camera may not be available. Fully charge the terminal before using the camera.
- The captured images may be different from actual objects for color and brightness.
- If you try to shoot an intense light source directly like the sun etc., the images may be dark or noisy.
- Fingerprints or body oil on the lens can affect images. Wipe with a soft cloth before shooting.
- The battery consumption is faster when using the camera.
- When the battery is low, lighting volume for flash may be limited.
- Shutter sound, auto focus lock sound, and count down sound for self timer when shooting still pictures are emitted regardless of the Manner mode, Public mode settings, and volume setting.
- If you do not operate for 2 minutes during stand-by, Camera ends.

- When you are 10 cm or more away from an object, the camera automatically focuses on the object and shoots a picture according to the set scene mode.

### Copyrights and portrait rights

Avoid reproducing, altering, or editing taken or recorded pictures or sounds using the terminal without the copyright holders authorization, because, except for personal use etc., they are prohibited by the Copyright law. Avoid using or altering pictures of others without their consent, because they may infringe on portrait rights.

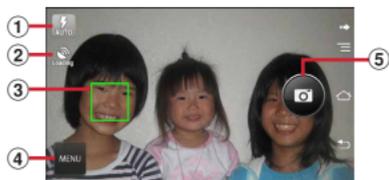
Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



Take care not to infringe on privacy when shooting or sending images with the phone equipped with camera.

If you cause the public any trouble using the terminal, you may be punished under law or regulations (for example, nuisance prevention ordinance).

## ◆ Viewing shooting screen



Still image shooting screen



Video shooting screen

### ① Flash icon

- Appears when shooting still pictures in a dark place. → P96

### ② Location information icon

→P97

### ③ Face detection frame

- When a face is not detected, the camera automatically focuses on the center of the screen to show a detection frame.

### ④ Menu icon

### ⑤ Shutter button

### ⑥ Start/stop recording button

### ⑦ Button for shooting still images while recording a video

- Appears only when recording a video to shoot still images.

## ◆ Shooting still images

1 From the Home screen, → [Camera]

2 Display an object on the shooting screen → /

Shutter sound is heard and a still image is shot.

### ■ Main operations on the still image shooting screen

#### Zooming : Pinch-in/Pinch-out the screen

- Pinch-in/pinch-out to show a slide bar. You can zoom in/out using the slide bar. Zoom function is not available for in-camera.

Switching to in-camera/out-camera : [MENU] → [Switch camera]

Displaying/Playing taken still picture/video : Flick left

## ◆ Continuous shooting

You can shoot continuously up to 100 images by switching the shooting mode to [RapidPic].

- [RapidPic] mode is not available for shooting with in-camera or shooting with [HDR mode].
- When [RapidPic] is set, continuous shooting mode retains even when exiting the camera application.

**1** From the Home screen, → [Camera]

**2** [MENU] → [RapidPic]

**3** Display an object on the shooting screen →  
Touch and hold / Press and hold

- While pressing shutter, continuous shooting and saving are kept. When you release the finger, continuous shooting ends.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Continuous shooting stops when saving destination becomes low on memory.
- In camera settings for [RapidPic] mode, you can set for shooting size, location information, saving location and touch shutter. → P96

## ◆ Panorama shooting

Move the camera left and right, or up and down by little to shoot panorama image.

- Panorama shooting is not available for in-camera.

**1** From the Home screen, → [Camera]

**2** [MENU] → [Panorama]

**3** Face the camera toward an object

**4** (Start) /

Shooting start sound is heard and a shooting is started.

- If you move the camera too fast, "Too fast" appears.  
Move the camera so that the message does not appear.

**5** (Shutter ends) /

Shooting end sound is heard, shooting stops and a panorama image is saved.

- When the shooting is finished while moving the camera, the shooting end sound does not sound.

## ◆ Automatic still image shooting

---

The terminal automatically adjusts settings and shoots pictures in the following functions.

- Image stabilizer is always turned on.

### ■ Auto focus

Regardless of the distance from an object, the camera automatically focuses on a pointed object.

- When an object includes people, face detection frame appears first to be focused on.

### ■ Touch focus

Touch a displayed object to automatically focus on. When [Touch shutter] in camera settings is set to ON, shooting can be done with shutter sound when object is focused on.

### ■ White balance

Automatically adjust for shooting pure white under various sources of light (sunlight, cloudy sky, artificial source of light such as incandescent or fluorescent).

### ■ Scene mode

Automatically recognize according to object and circumstance and switch suitable shooting mode.

- When QR code is displayed, QR code is scanned and results are shown.

### ■ Automatic exposure

Automatically adjust exposure according to the ambient lighting. When face detection frame of auto focus appears, exposure is fixed based on the brightness of face. If you want to use an object as the base, tap the object to fix the exposure. The object is given priority even if a face is detected.

### ■ Adjust flicker

Reduce flicker noise or stripe pattern emerged under a fluorescent lamp etc.

## ◆ Shooting settings for still image

---

Tap [MENU] displayed on the still image shooting screen to change the following shooting settings.

- Some items cannot be selected depending on the combinations.
- When you change the settings, some other settings may also be changed accordingly.
- Some items cannot be set for the in-camera.
- If the Camera is activated from other than the Home screen or the application list screen, some settings are unavailable.

### ■ Camera Mode

Tap Still/RapidPic/Video/Panorama/QR code to select a camera mode.

### ■ Switch camera

Switch to in-camera/out-camera.

### ■ Picture Size

Select shooting size.

- Although Picture Size larger than [Fit screen] (1920×1080) is set, when you activate Camera from another application such as mail, an image size will be changed automatically to [Fit screen] because of limit of attached file size for mail etc.

## Flash

Set whether to automatically turn on the flash when shooting in a dark place. If auto-flash is set, when the camera determines that lighting is insufficient,  appears on the screen to notify that the flash is ready. Tap the icon to temporarily turn off the flash.

- Even if the setting is off, notification icon appears to inform you that the flash is off when the lighting is insufficient. Tap the icon to enable auto-flash temporarily.
- If continuous shooting or "HDR mode" is set, the flash does not turn on. Or depending on night scene, it may not turn on.

## HDR mode

Shoot 2 images in different exposure time (long exposure and short exposure) and compose a still image that white out or crushed blacks is reduced.

## SelfTimer

Set to shoot a picture 2 seconds () or 5 seconds () after the shutter is pressed.

## Others

**Location** : Set to add location information to shot images.

When location information is set to be added, icon of  for obtaining location information (not obtained) appears, then  for completion of obtaining appears on the shooting screen.

**Save** : Select data saving location (Terminal/SD card).

- If the selected saving destination is low on memory, a message appears and switch saving destination temporarily.

**Touch shutter** : Set to shoot with shutter sound by touching an object when the object is focused on. Even in continuous mode, only one image is shot.

## Shooting video

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Camera]

**2** [MENU] → [Video]

**3** Display an object on the shooting screen →   
(Start)/ 

Shooting start sound is heard and a shooting is started.

- When shooting starts, elapsed time appears on the shooting screen.

**4**  (Stop)/ 

Shooting end sound is heard and a shooting stops.

- Recording stops when saving location become low on memory or when file size of recorded data reaches the limit (2 GB). Also, recording stops when a call is received while recording.

## Main operations on the video shooting screen

**Shooting still image while recording** : Tap  of the still picture shooting button shown while recording a video.

- The shutter sound is not emitted for still image shooting while recording video.

**Zooming** : Pinch-in/Pinch-out the screen

- Pinch-in/pinch-out to show a slide bar. You can zoom in/out using the slide bar. Zoom function is not available for in-camera.

**Switching to in-camera/out-camera** : [MENU] → [Switch camera]

**Displaying/Playing taken still picture/video** : Flick left

## ◆ Automatic video recording

---

The terminal automatically adjusts settings and records video in the following functions.

- Image stabilizer and recording voice are always turned on.

### ■ Auto focus

Start recording when the center of the screen is clearly focused on.

### ■ Touch focus

Touch an object displayed before/while recording to automatically focus on.

### ■ White balance

Automatically adjust for recording pure white under various sources of light (sunlight, cloudy sky, artificial source of light such as incandescent or fluorescent).

## ◆ Shooting settings for video

---

Tap [MENU] displayed on the video shooting screen to change the following shooting settings.

- Some items cannot be selected depending on the combinations.
- Some items cannot be set for the in-camera.

### ■ Camera Mode

Tap Still/RapidPic/Video/Panorama/QR code to select a camera mode.

### ■ Switch camera

Switch to in-camera/out-camera.

### ■ Movie Size

Select shooting size.

### ■ Light

Set whether to automatically turn on the flash when recording in a dark place.

### ■ WDR mode

Set to adjust contrasting of screen for video with crushed blacks reduced even in backlight.

### ■ Save

Select data saving location (Terminal/SD card).

- If the selected saving destination is low on memory, a message appears and switch saving destination temporarily.

## ◆ QR code reader

---

Scan QR code data and use it.

- QR code cannot be scanned for some versions (type and size).
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.

## ◆ Reading with QR code reader

---

- If the code is not scanned well, try to change the distance between the code and camera, the angle or direction of camera.

1 From the Home screen,  → [Camera]

2 [MENU] → [QR code]

### 3 Display barcode on the shooting screen → Scan or tap on the shooting screen

A confirmation sound is played when scanning is complete and the scanned data appears.

#### Scanning divided data :

One data item divided into multiple (up to 16) QR codes can be scanned and be displayed as a combined data. Continue reading if unscanned data exists.

**Returning to the still image shooting screen :** [BACK]

**Turning the light ON/OFF :**  → [Light ON]/[Light OFF]

**Displaying history :**  → [History]

### 4 Check scanned data

**Saving data :**  → [Save to history] → Tap history field

### ❖ Using QR code data

Use the scanned QR code data.

- Displayed menu options may vary depending on the scanned data.

**Saving all data in the phonebook :**  → [Batch register contacts] → Save in the phonebook

**Creating mail :** Select mail address to create a message

**Connecting to the website or home page :** Select URL

**Saving the URL to the Bookmarks :**  → [Register in bookmarks]

**Making a call :** Select a phone number to make a call

## Gallery

**Display/Play saved images (still images or videos) by shooting with the camera or downloading.**

- The following file types of data can be displayed/played. However, some files may not be viewed/played back.

Still image : JPEG, BMP, GIF\*, PNG, WEBP

Video : H.263, H.264, MPEG-4, WMV9, VC-1, VP8

\* GIF animation cannot be played.

### ◆ Viewing/Playing image

**1 From the Home screen,  → [Gallery]**

**2 Select an album**

- For videos,  appears.
- Tap Grid view/Film strip view at the top of the screen to switch views.

**3 Select an image**

- Flick the screen left and right to switch between the previous and next screen.
- Pinch-out/Pinch-in to zoom in/out.
- For video, tap  to play. Use  to adjust sound volume, play/pause, fast-rewinding/fast-forwarding, etc. with displayed icon or slider.

## ■ Main icons and functions

-  : Saving destination is internal memory of the terminal.
-  : Saving destination is microSD card
-  : Activate camera
-  : Send/upload/print etc. image (→P159)
-  : Deleting image
-  : [Slideshow]/[Edit]/[Rotate left]/[Rotate right]/[Crop]/[Set picture as]/[Move/Copy]/[Details]/[Show on map] etc.

\* Some files may not be moved/copied.

## ❖ Categorizing and viewing images

- Tap [Albums] in the album list to switch display categorizing by [Albums]/[Locations]/[Times]/[Tags].  
When sorting by [Tags], images are sorted by tag information set in Picasa album. Set tag information in Picasa album in advance, and then synchronize Google account with Picasa registered with the terminal.

## ❖ Selecting album/image

- Touch and hold an album/image on the album list/image list to display check mark at the upper left of the screen. Frame in light blue appears on the image and the image is in selected status. Tap to deselect.
- When albums/images are selected, number of selected items is displayed at the right of mark at the upper left of the screen. Tap a number of selected items to operate [Select all]/[Deselect all].

## ✓ INFORMATION

- In the album list,  → Tap [Settings] → [Brightness up] to set whether to display detailed image brighter.

## ❖ Operations using remote control while TV screen is displayed

While TV screen is displayed by MHL connection, operations using remote control is available.

- Basic operations corresponding to the keys on remote control are as follows. Operation may vary by connected TV set.

"OK" button : Select

"←/→/↑/↓" button : Slide/Flick

"Home" button : Home icon on navigation bar

"Back" button : Back icon on navigation bar

## Media Player

You can use the Media player to play music/video and music/video contents downloaded from the store.

- Playable music file formats/codecs are AAC, HE-AAC v1, HE-AAC v2, MP3, MIDI and WMA. Playable video file formats are H.263, H.264, MPEG-4, WMV9, VC-1 and VP8. However, some files may not be played back.
- Files in MIDI format and received files cannot be displayed in the list. Playing is possible when the file is selected in other application etc.
- For details on how to transfer music/video files to the microSD card from a PC, see "Operating data on the terminal from a PC". →P158
- For the first activation, select [使い方の説明を読む (Read user guide)] or [説明を読まず利用する (Use without reading guide)].

## ◆ Playing music/video

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Media Player]
- 2 Select an icon → Select an item
- 3 Select a song/video

## ◆ Purchasing from dmarket

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Media Player]
- 2 [dmarket] → [Search in d music]/[Search in d video]/[Search in d anime store]
  - When you activate for the first time, agree to "dマーケットソフトウェア使用許諾契約書 (dmarket License Agreement)".

## ◆ Help for Media Player

You can check operations of the Media player.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Media Player]
- 2  → [Help]

## YouTube

YouTube is a Google online video streaming service. You can play, search and upload videos to this service.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [YouTube]
  -  : Search video by an entered keyword.
  -  → [Help] : Displaying Help
- 2 Select a video
  - Tap the playback screen and use the displayed keys or slider to pause/play or specify playback position.
  - When the play screen is shown in full-screen mode, the ON/OFF setting icon () for High quality (HQ) playback appears.

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Video can be corrected using the video correction engine by marking [Video correction]. → P128
- Video files of several hundred MB or more should be uploaded from the PC. Uploading may not be possible from the terminal in some network environments.

## GPS/Navigation

You can use the GPS function on the terminal and a compatible application to check your current location or search for routes to your destination.

- The terminal is equipped with GPS receiver using satellite signal for measuring current location. When using GPS function, a packet communication charge may be applied.

### ◆ Using the GPS function

- Note that DOCOMO is not liable for any damages that may occur as a result of irregularities in the GPS system.
- Note that DOCOMO is not liable for pure economic loss if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with the terminal because of failure, malfunction or external factors such as power failure (including battery exhaustion).
- You cannot use the terminal as a navigation system for aircraft, vehicles, persons, etc. For this reason, note that DOCOMO is not liable for losses incurred by navigation performed by using location information.
- You cannot use the terminal as a high-accuracy measurement GPS. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss due to a deviation of the location information.
- GPS is a service operated by the USA Department of Defense, so the GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degraded, radio wave suspended, etc.) for reasons of US national security.
- Wireless communications products (mobile telephones, data detectors, etc.) might interfere with satellite signals and cause signal reception to become unstable.

- The displayed map based on the acquired location information (latitude and longitude information) may be inaccurate because of the legal system in each country and area.

### ■ Where radio waves are difficult to receive

Note that since GPS is using radio waves for satellites, under the following conditions, radio waves might not be able to be received or might be difficult to receive. Also, do not cover the GPS antenna (on the top left of the terminal) with your hand.

- Inside or immediately under a building
- Inside a basement or tunnel, and below the ground or water
- Inside a bag or box
- In buildings-clustered or residential area
- Inside or under a thick covering of trees
- Near a high-voltage cable
- In a car, inside a train compartment
- Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
- When there are obstructions (people or objects) near the terminal

### ◆ Location access setting

Allow location access to applications.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Location access]
- 2 Turn [Access to my location] to [ON] → [Agree] → [Agree]
  - If [Access to my location] is turned on, [GPS satellites]/[Wi-Fi & mobile network location] is marked and turned on. To turn the setting to OFF, tap to unmark.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- To measure highly accurate location information, use GPS in a place with sky view.
- Note that this function increases power consumption.
- Turning on [Access to my location] is regarded as your having agreed to be collected anonymous position data by Google's location information service. Data collection is carried out regardless of whether or not the application is activated.

## ◆ Google Maps

The Google Maps application lets you measure your current location, find locations and calculate routes.

- To use Google Maps, a network connection via LTE/3G/GSM network or Wi-Fi is required.
- To measure your current location, turn on [Access to my location] in advance.
- Google Maps do not cover all countries and cities.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Maps]

- For the first activation, tap [Settings] on the Improve location accuracy screen → Turn [Let Google apps access your location] to [ON].

## ❖ Positioning current location

### 1 On the map screen,

- The following operations are available while the map is displayed.  
**Scroll** : Scroll the map.  
**Swipe with 2 fingers** : Swipe up and down to tilt the map display. Rotation swipe rotates the map display.  
**Pinch-out/Pinch-in** : Zooms in/out.  
**Double tap** : Zooms in.  
**Tap with 2 fingers** : Zooms out.

## ❖ Street View

- Street View does not cover some areas.

### 1 On the map screen, touch and hold a position → Tap a call-out →

- For the first activation, check new functions of Street View and tap [OK].
- When Street View is operating,  → Tap [Compass mode] to activate Compass mode. The compass in Street View shows the same direction as the terminal's electronic compass.

## ❖ Searching for locations

---

### 1 On the map screen, → Enter a keyword in the Search box

- You can enter addresses, city names, business types and institution names (for example, art museum London).

### 2 /Select a search option → Tap a call-out on the map

- If multiple results are found, select a red circle on the map to display a call-out. You can tap [RESULTS LIST] to display the list, and select desired location to view a detailed information and options.
- The options you can use vary depending on the location.

## ❖ Searching for routes

---

### 1 On the map screen,

### 2 [My Location] → Enter the place of departure → [End point: ] → Enter the destination

- If you want to view the route from the current location, remain [My Location].
- You can tap  on the right of the entry field to specify the current location, address in Contacts, Point on map or My Places.

### 3 Select means of transportation (Car/Public transportation/Walk) → [NAVIGATION]/[GET DIRECTIONS]

 : Car  : Public transportation  : Walk

- If [NAVIGATION] is tapped while Car/Walk is selected, Navigation activates.
- If several routes are found when you search with public transportation, tap a route in the list.
- Tap   displayed at the bottom of the screen to go/return to the next/previous point. Tap  to activate Navigation.

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Alternatively, from the Home screen,  → [Navigation]

## ❖ Displaying layer

---

You can add traffic information to the map or switch to aerial photomap display.

### 1 On the map screen, → Select an item

- Traffic information and routes are not available in all locations.

## ❖ Google Latitude

You and your friends can check where you are on the map.

- To use Google Latitude, you need to set up a Google account on the terminal. If a Google account is not yet set, follow the onscreen instructions that are displayed when Latitude is activated for the first time.
- Location information cannot be automatically shared. You need to join Latitude and invite a friend who gives his or her location information, or to receive an invitation from him or her.

### 1 On the map screen, → [Latitude]

- For details on Latitude, refer to the Help by the following operations.  
While map screen is displayed,  → [Help] → [How to] → [Additional Maps features] → [Latitude].

## ◆ Local

You can quickly search for facilities, stores, etc. in the vicinity of your current location.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Local]

### 2 Select a category

- You can add facilities or stores (museums, bookstores, etc.) not in the list by tapping  → [Add a search].

### 3 Select a facility or store you want to search

### 4 Select operation

- The options you can use vary depending on the location.

## Calendar

You can manage your schedule synchronizing the calendar of Google account etc.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Calendar]

#### ■ Main operations in the schedule screen

**Switching display unit :** Tap year and month at the upper left screen → [Day]/[Week]/[Month]/[Agenda]

**Setting Calendar :**  → [Settings] → [General settings] → Set required items

## ◆ Managing calendar for synchronizing/viewing

### 1 On the calendar screen, → [Calendars to display]

- Registered account names or account calendar names appear. → P147

### 2 Mark an account name or account calendar name → [Calendars to sync] → Mark a calendar to synchronize → [OK]

## ◆ Registering event

### 1 On the calendar screen, → [New event]

- If the calendar is not synchronized yet, a screen to add an account appears. Add an account if required.
- Alternatively, touch and hold day or hour (for Month view, tap date and then touch and hold the time) → Tap [New event].

### 2 Set required items → [DONE]

#### ❖ When the notification time is reached

Notification is made according to the setting. You can check schedule or set snooze in the following steps.

### 1 Open the Notification panel

### 2 Perform required operations

#### Checking event : Tap notification

A detailed information screen appears. You can edit or delete events.

#### Snoozing notifications : [Snooze]

Schedule is notified again in 5 minutes.

## ◆ Checking event

Display information of registered event.

### 1 On the calendar screen, tap an event

- On the month display screen, tap the day then tap the target event.

## ■ Main operations in the Calendar detailed screen

Editing event :  → Edit event details → [DONE]

Deleting event :  → [OK]

## AlarmClock

You can set Comfortable Alarm which detects your sleep cycle to sound alarm in a lighter part of your sleep.

- Up to 10 alarms can be registered for Alarm. Only 1 Comfortable Alarm can be set per a day.
- The alarm clock does not operate if the terminal is not fully charged. It is recommended to use the Comfortable Alarm while charging.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [AlarmClock]

### 2 [Setting Alarm] → Set time → Set each item → [Save] → [OK]

Turning alarm on/off : Tap  to turn to  (green)/  
Tap  (green) to turn to 

Turning Comfortable Alarm on/off : Mark/Unmark  
[Comfortable]

- When a Caution screen appears after marking, tap [OK].

Editing alarm : Tap alarm time → Set each item → [Save] → [OK]

Deleting alarm : Tap alarm time → [Delete] → [Delete]

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- Comfortable Alarm detects your sleep cycle, but it may not be available to detect within the time set in [Comfortable Time]. Regardless of being detected or not, alarm sounds at the set time and snooze if [Snooze] is set.

## Calculator

1 From the Home screen, → [Calculator]

2 Calculate

**Deleting an entered character :** [C]

**Switching between function pad and arithmetic**

**operation pad :** → [Advanced panel]/[Basic panel]

• Alternatively, flick left or right.

**Deleting history :** → [Clear history]

**Cutting/Copying/Pasting :** Touch and hold mathematical expression display field → Operate to cut/copy/paste

- Flick mathematical expression display field up or down to display the mathematical expression log.
- When calculation result is displayed, you can add a mathematical expression to the result.

## Electronic dictionary

You can use the electronic dictionary.

1 From the Home screen, → [e-Dictionaries+]

2 Enter a keyword → [Search]

- When entering characters, search suggestions appear linking with the keyword (Incremental search).

**Voice search :** → Speak a keyword

**Displaying Help :** → [Help]

You can check how to operate the electronic dictionary etc.

**Setting electronic dictionary :** → [Settings/Manage/Info] → [Misc Settings] → Set required items

Set font size, number of search results, operations for playback.

**Managing dictionaries :** → [Settings/Manage/Info] → [Dictionary Manager] → Perform required operations

Change saving location for dictionary or delete dictionary.

3 Tap a keyword you want to check

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- Use the terminal or PC to add dictionary data from the download site. For details, see [Get more dictionaries] of [Dictionaries] tab.
- For downloading dictionary contents using a PC, remove the microSD card from the terminal to connect to a PC using microSD card reader/writer etc. and then install the dictionary contents to the microSD card.
- It may take time to download dictionary contents connecting Internet depending on communication environment. When downloading data using the terminal, packet communication charge may become high. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- While downloading with the terminal, you can also use functions other than dictionary downloading.
- Even if downloading dictionaries is canceled on the way, dictionary whose downloading is complete can be updated.
- When voice search is used or Wikipedia search is used, a packet communication charge may be applied.

## Search

Enter a keyword to search in the terminal or websites, call up applications in the terminal to activate. Searching web sites using Voice search is also available.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Google] → Enter a keyword

Search suggestions appear according to the character entry.

**Voice Search** : From the Home screen,  → [Voice Search] → Speak a keyword

### 2 Select a search suggestion

#### ◆ Search settings

Make search settings.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Google] → → [Settings]

### 2 Set required items

**Voice** : Set language or voice input.

**Phone search** : Specify search target applications in the terminal.

**Privacy & accounts** : Set privacy for Google search and accounts.

- To show help of Privacy and accounts, tap  at the upper right of the screen.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- When the Home application is set to "NX!Home", you can search with handwritten word while the Home screen is displayed.

Settings of handwriting search are as follows.

**Setting search function** : From the Home screen,  → [Handwriting search: Start]/[Handwriting search: End].

**Setting search target** : From the Home screen,  → [Home settings] → [Set handwriting search] → Mark search target

- When you select [Ultra unified searching] with which you can specify a search site as search location in Set handwriting search, touch and hold the Home screen → [Widgets] → [Ultra unified searching] to activate and use it. When the Home application is set to "NX!Home", you can activate "Ultra unified searching widget" from the Home screen to use it.

## ドコモバックアップ (SD card backup)

Transfer or back up phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, bookmarks, etc. using external memory such as a microSD card.

- When you activate for the first time, agree to "Software license agreement".

## ◆ Backup

Back up data such as phonebook, sp-mode mail, media files, etc. to a microSD card.

- If a microSD card is not inserted, image/video data is saved to the phone memory according to the terminal memory structure. With the application, only image/video data saved to the phone memory can be backed up. Data saved in a microSD card is not backed up.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)] → [microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card)]

**2** [Backup] → Select data to back up → [Start backup] → [Backup] → Enter docomo apps password

## ◆ Restore

Restore data of phonebook, sp-mode mail, media files, etc. backed up on a microSD card to the terminal.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)] → [microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card)]

**2** [Restore] → [Select] for data type to restore → Select data to restore → [Select] → Select restore method → [Start restore] → [Restore] → Enter a docomo apps password.

## ◆ Phonebook account copy

Copy phonebook data stored on a Google account to docomo account.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)] → [microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card)]

**2** [Phonebook account copy] → In Google account phonebook, [Select] → [Overwrite]/[Add]

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Do not remove the microSD card from the terminal during backup or restoration. Data may be damaged.
- If the item names (e.g. Phone number, etc.) of another terminal phonebook are different from those in the terminal, the item names may be changed or deleted. Also, some text may be deleted in copied destination, because savable characters in a phonebook entry vary by terminal.
- When backing up phonebook entries to microSD card, entries without name cannot be copied.
- When available memory space of microSD card is not enough, backup may not be executed. In such case, delete unnecessary files from the microSD card to save the memory space.
- When the remaining battery gets low, backup or restoration may not be executed. In such case, charge the battery of the terminal and then back up or restore.
- For each function, instructions, and other menu items,  → Tap [Help] to refer.

# Settings

## Setting menu

You can make various settings in the menu displayed from the Home screen,  → Tap [Settings].

### ■ PROFILE

Menu		Page
My profile		62
Initial settings	Slide-in function	39
	Select lock	
	Security unlock preference	
	Easy data transfer support	

### ■ WIRELESS & NETWORKS

Menu		Page	
Wi-Fi		116	
Easy Wi-Fi registration	AOSS system	118	
	WPS system		
Miracast		163	
Bluetooth		154	
FM transmitter	Radio frequency	119	
More...	Data usage	119	
	Airplane mode	119	
	VPN settings	120	
	Tethering	120	
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings	77	
	Mobile networks		114
			122
			166
Bluetooth Low Energy Settings		156	

## ■ DEVICE

	Menu	Page
Sound & Vibration settings	Volumes	122
	Alert sensitivity	123
	Public mode	57
	Manner mode	123
	Turn off sound when flipped	124
	MIC input	124
	Phone ringtone	
	Missed call LED	124
	Vibrate on ring	124
	Notification sound	
	Dialpad touch tones	
	Touch sounds	
	Screen lock sound	
	Charge vibrate	
	Vibrate when touch	
	Distinct touch	
	Vibration level	124
	Increase vibration level when walking	

	Menu	Page
Display	Brightness	125
	Sleep/Lit when held	125
	Wallpaper	48
	Daydream	125
	Theater mode	125
	Slide display	126
	Hovering settings	126
	Privacy view	126
	Homescreen selector	46
	Customize screen	46
	Navigation bar	126
	Battery icon	126
	Auto-rotate screen	126
	Best-fit zoom	126
	Intelligent color adjust	127
	Shake to unrotate	127
	Blue light cut mode	127
	Font settings	127
	Font size	127
	Dominant hand	127
Key misoperation support	128	

	Menu	Page
Illumination	Illumination	128
	Theme-based setting	
	Receiving voice call	
	At start of/during voice call	
	At Gmail notification	
	At Email notification	
	At SMS notification	
	At start of recharge	
	At alarm notification	
	At power ON/OFF	
	At unlocking	
	At earphone insertion	
	At self-timer (camera)	
Multimedia	Video correction	128
	Picture correction	
	Long-play mode	128
	Launch Application	129
Storage	Unmount SD card/Mount SD card	129
	Erase SD card	
	Unmount USB storage/ Mount USB storage	162
	Download file save-to destination	73

	Menu	Page
Battery	Battery monitor sensor	129
	Battery usage	
	App running time	
	App battery check	
NX! eco		130
Apps		130
<b>■ PERSONAL</b>		
	Menu	Page
docomo service*	Application manager	131
	docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	
	Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps	
	docomo apps password	
	AUTO-GPS	
	docomo location information	
	Data usage check	
	SD card backup	
docomo cloud	Send device error information	131
	Open source licenses	
docomo cloud		—

	Menu	Page
Location access	Access to my location	102
	GPS satellites	
	Wi-Fi & mobile network location	
Security	Select lock	134
	Lock screen wallpaper	135
	Slide left to activate camera	134
	Owner info	135
	Security unlock preference	135
	Fingerprint settings	138
	Application lock	139
	Encrypt phone	139
	Set up SIM/RUIM card lock	133
	Make passwords visible	135
	Password manager	140
	Hide recently used app	140
	Privacy Mode Settings	140
	Device administrators	—
	Unknown sources	143
	Verify apps	143
Trusted credentials	143	
Install from SD card	143	
Clear credentials	144	
SD card password settings	144	

	Menu	Page
More...	My physical profile	144
	Slide-in function	145
	Language & input	37
		39
	Backup & reset	178

## ■ ACCOUNTS

	Menu	Page
	Add account	147

## ■ SYSTEM

	Menu	Page
Date & time	Automatic date & time	147
	Automatic time zone	
	Set date	
	Set time	
	Select time zone	
	Use 24-hour format	
	Choose date format	

	Menu	Page
Accessibility	Magnification gestures	148
	Large text	
	Power button ends call	
	Auto-rotate screen	
	Speak passwords	
	Accessibility shortcut	
	Text-to-speech output	
	Enhance web accessibility	
About phone	Software Update	180
	Upgrade Android software	184
	Status	148
	Legal information	
	Auth	
	Model number	
	Android version	
	Baseband version	
	Kernel version	
	Build number	

\* Some applications displayed in the docomo service can be disabled. If an application is disabled, it may not appear in the list of docomo service. If an application is newly downloaded from docomo, an item may be added to the list of docomo service.

## WIRELESS & NETWORKS

### ◆ Setting access point (APN)

Access points for connecting to the Internet (sp-mode, mopera U) are already registered. You can add or change it if necessary.

- By default, sp-mode is set for the usual access point.
- When Tethering is set to on, access point setting is unavailable. →P120

### ❖ Checking the access point in use

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Mobile networks] → [Access Point Names]

### ❖ Adding new access point (New APN)

- Do not change the MCC/MNC to other than 440/10. The setting disappears from the screen.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Mobile networks] → [Access Point Names]

**2**  → [New APN]

**3** [Name] → Enter a network profile → [OK]

**4** [APN] → Enter the access point name → [OK]

## 5 Enter other items required by network operator → → [Save]

### ✓INFORMATION

- If you have changed MCC/MNC settings and they do not appear on the APN list screen, reset access point or make access point settings in [New APN] again.

## ❖ Initializing an access point

By initializing an access point, the default state is restored.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Mobile networks] → [Access Point Names]

### 2 → [Reset to default]

### ✓INFORMATION

- You can delete access point one by one by selecting an access point from the APN list screen,  → Tap [Delete APN].

## ❖ sp-mode

sp-mode is an ISP for NTT DOCOMO smartphone. In addition to accessing Internet, you can use the mail service using the same address as i-mode mail (@docomo.ne.jp), etc.

- sp-mode is a service requiring subscription. For details on sp-mode, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

## ❖ Setting mopera U

mopera U is an ISP of NTT DOCOMO. If you have subscribed to mopera U, you can use Internet after making the simple settings.

- mopera U is a service requiring subscription.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Mobile networks] → [Access Point Names]

### 2 [mopera U]/[mopera U設定 (mopera U settings)]

### ✓INFORMATION

- [mopera U設定 (mopera U settings)] is an access point for setting mopera U. When you use the access point for setting mopera U, packet communication charges for setting do not apply. Note that you can connect only the initial setting screen or the change setting screen. For details on mopera U settings, refer to mopera U website (in Japanese only).

## ◆ Wi-Fi

You can use mail or access the Internet by connecting to the home or company network or public wireless LAN access point.

To connect to a LAN access point, you need to set connection information.

### ■ Reception interference caused by Bluetooth

Wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g/n) and Bluetooth function use the same frequency band (2.4GHz). If you use the wireless LAN function and Bluetooth function of the terminal at the same time, reception interference may occur and the communication speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem.

Even when you use only wireless LAN function of the terminal, the same problem may occur when someone uses a Bluetooth device near you. In this case, do the following.

- Keep the terminal over 10 m away from a Bluetooth device.
- If you use the terminal within 10 m, turn off the Bluetooth device.

## ◆ Connecting to network with Wi-Fi ON

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings]

**2** Set [Wi-Fi] to [ON]

**3** [Wi-Fi] → Select a Wi-Fi network

- When you select a Wi-Fi network protected by security, enter a password (security key) and tap [Connect].
- After selecting Wi-Fi network, connection selection screen may appear.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Even when Wi-Fi is ON, packet communication is available. However, while you connect Wi-Fi network, Wi-Fi comes first. When the Wi-Fi network is disconnected, it switches to LTE/3G/GSM network connection automatically. Note that packet communication fee may apply if network connection stays switched.
- If auto-IP setting is ON and you enter a wrong password (security code) when selecting an access point to connect, [Private IP address has been assigned. Connection is restricted.] appears. Make sure the password (security code). If [Private IP address has been assigned. Connection is restricted.] appears in spite of entering correct password (security code), correct IP address may not have been obtained. Check signal condition and reconnect.
- To use docomo services via Wi-Fi when you use Wi-Fi, set Wi-Fi option password beforehand. To make settings, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [docomo service] → In [Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps], tap [Wi-Fi option password] to operate.

## ◆ Scanning Wi-Fi network

- Set Wi-Fi to ON in advance.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Wi-Fi]

**2**  → [Scan]

## ❖ Adding Wi-Fi network

---

Enter network SSID or security information to add Wi-Fi network manually.

- Set Wi-Fi to ON in advance.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Wi-Fi]
- 2** [+]
- 3** Enter a network SSID of Wi-Fi network to add → Select security
  - Security can be set to [None], [WEP], [WPA/WPA2 PSK] or [802.1x EAP].
- 4** Enter additional security information as required → [Save]

## ❖ Disconnecting Wi-Fi network

---

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Wi-Fi]
- 2** Select the connected Wi-Fi network → [Forget]

## ❖ Connecting other devices with Wi-Fi Direct

---

Connect between Wi-Fi Direct devices without routing an access point etc.

- Set Wi-Fi to ON in advance.
- To transfer data such as videos or still images using Wi-Fi Direct, obtain an application compatible with data transfer via Wi-Fi Direct from Play Store and install it.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Wi-Fi]
- 2**  → [Wi-Fi Direct]
  - When a Wi-Fi Direct device does not appear, tap [SEARCH FOR DEVICES].
- 3** Tap a detected Wi-Fi Direct device  
**Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct device** : Tap a connected Wi-Fi Direct device → [OK]
- When other Wi-Fi Direct device requests connecting to the terminal

When an invitation screen for connecting appears, tap [Accept].

## ❖ Advanced Wi-Fi settings

1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Wi-Fi]

2  → [Advanced]

3 Set each item

**Network notification** : Set to notify you when Wi-Fi open network is available.

**Wi-Fi Auto ON/OFF** : Turn Wi-Fi to ON/OFF automatically using information from the mobile network base station. Set whether to automatically turn Wi-Fi to ON or OFF if detecting an area where Wi-Fi connection was performed.

**Wi-Fi sleep policy** : Set whether to use Wi-Fi when the terminal screen is OFF or while the battery is charged.

**Avoid poor connections** : Set whether not to use Wi-Fi network when it is unstable.

**Wi-Fi frequency band** : Set Wi-Fi frequency band.

**Wi-Fi optimization** : Set whether to minimize battery usage when Wi-Fi is ON.

**MAC address/IP address** : Display MAC address, IP address.

**auto-IP setting** : Enable/disable auto-IP function.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- [Wi-Fi Auto ON/OFF] does not work if Airplane mode or Wi-Fi tethering is ON.
- The terminal may not connect automatically even when [Wi-Fi Auto ON/OFF] is activated because Wi-Fi information in the area is changed etc. In such case, connect manually.

## ◆ Easy Wi-Fi registration

You can connect through simple operations when connecting via a Wireless access point supporting AOSS™ or WPS.

1 From the Home screen,  → [Easy Wi-Fi registration]

2 [Easy Wi-Fi registration] → Select a registration method

**AOSS™ system** : [AOSS system] → Tap [AOSS] button → Perform operations on the access point → On the registration screen, [Finish]

- For the first using, agree to "ソフトウェア使用許諾書 (License Agreement)".

**WPS system** : [WPS system] → [Push button system]/[PIN entry system (8 digits)]/[PIN entry system (4 digits)] → Perform necessary operations on the access point

- In case of push button method, press a dedicated button on an access point. In case of PIN entry method, enter PIN code displayed on the terminal to an access point device and tap [OK].

### ✓ INFORMATION

- For some wireless LAN access points, AOSS™ connection may not be established. If connection is failed, use WPS connection or connect manually.
- When security on the wireless LAN access point is set to WEP, you cannot connect in WPS system.

## ◆ FM transmitter

---

You can transmit music saved in the terminal via FM radio waves to listen from an FM radio or car stereo system.

- When using FM transmitter, fully extend the FM transmitter antenna.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 Set [FM transmitter] to [ON]
- 3 [FM transmitter] → [Radio frequency] → Select a radio frequency
- 4 Tune to the frequency on the receiver

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- FM transmitter is unavailable while the terminal is in the following status. If the terminal is in the following status when FM transmitter is ON, FM transmitter turns off automatically. It does not turn off during a voice call or while receiving a call, but the voice call cannot be output.
  - During a voice call, while receiving a call, in Airplane mode, when Bluetooth is ON, when earphones are connected, while outputting in MHL/Miracast, during International roaming
  - When you have never entered the service area since the terminal was ON

## ◆ Data usage

---

You can enable Internet access via mobile network, set limit of mobile data communications on graph or set alert when usage exceeds the limit.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Data usage]
- 2 Set [Mobile data] to [ON]

Data usage managing screen appears and mobile data communication volume (estimate) per period or per application is displayed.

- To restrict volume of data usage, mark [Set mobile data limit].
-  → Mark [Restrict background data] to restrict data communication in background.

## ◆ Airplane mode

---

When Airplane mode is set, wireless functions of the terminal (phone, packet communication, Wi-Fi, Miracast, tethering, Bluetooth function, FM transmitter) are disabled. Wi-Fi and Bluetooth function can be manually turned on in Airplane mode.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Airplane mode] to [ON]

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- You can also enable/disable Airplane mode from the phone options menu displayed by pressing and holding .

## ◆ Connecting VPN (Virtual Private Network)

---

VPN (Virtual Private Network) is a technology to connect to the information in a protected local network such as enterprises or universities from another network. To set up a VPN connection from the terminal, you need to retrieve the information related to security from your network administrator.

- When ISP is set to sp-mode, PPTP is not available.
- Set "Security code" or "Password" in security unlock preference beforehand. → P135

## ◆ Adding VPN

---

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [VPN settings]

**2** [+ ] → Set required items for VPN settings → [Save]

## ◆ Connecting to VPN

---

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [VPN settings]

**2** Select a VPN to connect to

**3** Enter necessary authentication information → [Connect]

- When you are connected to the VPN,  appears on the status bar.

## ◆ Disconnecting VPN

---

**1** Open the Notification panel

**2** Select a notification of VPN connecting → [Disconnect]

## ◆ Tethering

---

Tethering is a function for using mobile devices such as smartphones as modems to allow external devices connected via USB or Wi-Fi to access the Internet.

- When you connect to Internet using tethering, Wi-Fi device applications such as web browser or game may not work properly depending on the condition of use.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- To see information about tethering, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Tethering] → [Help].

## ❖ USB tethering

Connect the terminal to a PC using PC connection USB cable T01 (optional) or Micro USB Cable 01 (optional) to use the terminal as a modem to access the Internet.

**1** Connect the terminal and a PC with the USB cable

**2** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...]→[Tethering]

**3** [USB tethering]

- When you use Windows XP PC, remove the USB cable from the PC without turning off the USB tethering on the terminal.

**4** Check the precautions and [OK]

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operations on Windows XP (Service Pack 3 or later)/Windows Vista/Windows 7/Windows 8 PC are confirmed. However, operations for all PCs are not guaranteed.
- To perform USB tethering with Windows XP, install dedicated driver to a PC. For download information of the dedicated driver, refer to the following website.  
<http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/usb/> (in Japanese only)

## ❖ Wi-Fi tethering

You can allow Wi-Fi devices to access the Internet by using the terminal as Wi-Fi hotspot.

- You can connect up to 8 Wi-Fi devices.
- Only 2.4 GHz is supported for tethering.

### ■ Setting Wi-Fi tethering

Set Wi-Fi tethering to ON for connection setting.

- By default, [WPA2 PSK AES] is set for Security and random characters are set for [Password]. Make the security setting as required.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...]→[Tethering]

**2** [Wi-Fi tethering]

**3** Check the alert and [OK]

**4** [Network SSID]→Enter a network SSID

- By default, "F-06E\_AP" is set.
- When changing registered setting, select [Configure Wi-Fi hotspot] to display the setting screen.

**5** [Security]→Select a security

- Security can be set to [Open], [WEP64], [WEP128], [WPA PSK TKIP], [WPA PSK AES], [WPA2 PSK AES] or [WPA/WPA2 PSK].

**6** [Password]→Enter a password→[Save]

## ❖ Easy registration of Wi-Fi device

Register Wi-Fi device supporting AOSS™ or WPS.

- Set Wi-Fi tethering to ON in advance.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Tethering] → [Easy Wi-Fi registration]

### **2** Select a registration method

**AOSS™ system** : [AOSS system] → Perform necessary operations on the Wi-Fi device → On the registration screen, [OK]

**WPS system** : [WPS system] → [Push button system]/[PIN entry system] → Set required items → On the registration screen, [OK]

- In case of push button method, press a dedicated button on the Wi-Fi devices. In case of PIN entry method, enter PIN code displayed on the Wi-Fi device and tap [OK].

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When number of AOSS™ registration devices exceeds 24, a confirmation screen for deleting old registration appears. To use AOSS™ connection with new device, tap [Yes].
- To cancel AOSS™ setting, on the [Configure Wi-Fi hotspot] screen, tap [AOSS OFF].
- For some Wi-Fi devices, AOSS™ connection may not be established. If connection is failed, use WPS connection or connect manually.
- Only 2.4 GHz is supported for AOSS™ system.

## ◆ Stopping packet connection

Some applications automatically perform packet communications. Packet communication is kept active unless you cut off the connection or the time-out occurs. Activate or deactivate packet communication as required.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Mobile networks]

**2** Unmark [Data enabled]

## Sound & Vibration settings

### ◆ Volumes

You can adjust volume of media playing sound, ringtone & notification sound, alarm sound.

- You cannot set while Manner mode is enabled.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Volumes]

**2** Slide the slider to adjust sound volume → [OK]

## ◆ Alert sensitivity

---

Set whether to automatically adjust ringtone for incoming call or new mail when running/walking or to adjust according to the ambient sound.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Alert sensitivity] → Mark/Unmark [Adjust for noise]

## ◆ Manner mode

---

Set/Cancel Manner mode.

- You can change the Manner mode type. → P123

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Manner mode]

### 2 Mark [Enable manner mode]

- When Manner mode is activated, status icon appears on the status bar. The icon varies by Manner mode type. For each icon, see "Icons on the status bar". → P42

## ✓ INFORMATION

---

- You can also enable/disable Manner mode in the followings.
  -  (1 sec. or more)
  - Press and hold  until the phone options menu appears → Tap [Manner mode]/[Manner mode (Silent)]/[Manner mode (Alarm)]/[Original manner]
- Even in Manner mode, shutter sound, auto focus lock sound, count down sound for self timer and Find Me Ringtone for Bluetooth Low Energy Settings are emitted.

## ❖ Changing Manner mode type

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Manner mode] → [Select manner mode]

### 2 Selecting an item

**Manner mode** : All sounds do not sound from the terminal speaker.

**Manner mode (Silent)** : In addition to mute sounds, turn off the vibration.

**Manner mode (Alarm)** : Same operation as Manner mode except alarm volume and vibration go along to the alarm settings.

**Original manner** : Set sound volume and vibration for each sound type.

- Note that when the volume of original manner is set [Silent], increasing volume by pressing  etc. changes the volume settings of original manner.

## ❖ Original manner

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Manner mode] → [Original manner settings]

### 2 [Call ringtone volume]/[Media volume]/[Alarm volume]/[Notification volume]

### 3 Slide the slider to adjust sound volume → [OK]

### 4 Mark/Unmark [Vibration]

## ◆ Turn off sound when flipped

---

Set whether flipping the terminal stops temporarily ringtone, alarm sound, etc. However, the sound may not stop depending on the applications.

- When vibration is set, vibration also stops temporarily.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → Mark/Unmark [Turn off sound when flipped]

## ◆ Setting phone ringtone/notification sound/operation sound/vibration

---

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings]

### 2 Set each item

**MIC input** : Set microphone when connecting stereo earphones. When connecting stereo earphones without microphone, select [Phone MIC].

**Phone ringtone** : Set phone ringtone.

**Vibrate on ring** : Set whether to vibrate while ringtone is sounding.

- You cannot set during manner mode.

**Notification sound** : Set notification sound.

**Dialpad touch tones** : Switch touch tones of the dial pad to ON/OFF.

**Touch sounds** : Enable/disable touch sounds when selecting menu.

**Screen lock sound** : Switch notification sound for setting and canceling screen lock to ON/OFF.

**Charge vibrate** : Set whether to vibrate when starting and completion of charging.

**Vibrate when touch** : Set whether to vibrate when unlocking the lock screen.

## ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When ringtone is set for contacts, ringtone for contacts is given priority.

## ◆ Missed call LED

---

Set the indicator LED color for missed calls or phone memos.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Missed call LED] → Select a color → [OK]

## ◆ Distinct touch

---

Set whether to notify you of tap recognition by vibration.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → Mark/Unmark [Distinct touch]

- To adjust vibration level for [Distinct touch], from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → [Vibration level]. If [Strong]/[Normal] is selected, the terminal vibrates with set level when scrolling or tapping the screen. If [Mild] is selected, it does not vibrate when scrolling but only when tapping.
- To increase vibration level of Distinct touch while walking, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Sound & Vibration settings] → Mark [Increase vibration level when walking].

## Display

### ◆ Brightness

Set brightness of screen backlight.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Brightness]

**2** Slide the slider to adjust brightness → [OK]

- To adjust brightness automatically according to the environment, mark [Automatic brightness] and slide the slider to adjust brightness.
- To make the screen more visible even in a bright place such as outdoors, mark [Super clear mode].

### ◆ Sleep/Lit when held

#### ❖ Sleep

Set time until the screen turns off.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Sleep/Lit when held] → [Sleep] → Select a time

#### ❖ Keep lit when held

Set whether to keep the screen backlight on while the terminal is in motion, held in hand.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Sleep/Lit when held]

### **2** Mark/Unmark [Keep lit when held]

- If [Sleep soon when flat] is marked, when the terminal is in a horizontal position, the screen turns off in approximately 5 seconds regardless of set time in [Sleep].

### ◆ Daydream

Set daydream.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Daydream] → [ON] at the top right of the screen

### **2** Set required items

#### ◆ Theater mode

Set to display dedicated menus for the horizontal screen when charging starts on the desktop holder. → P29

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Theater mode] → [ON] at the top right of the screen

### **2** [Application settings] → Set each item

- Tap a button assigned for an application to delete or change the registered application.

## ◆ Slide display

---

Set to display the slide display icon (→P41).

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Slide display]→[ON] at the top right of the screen

**2** [Icon location]→Select an item

## ◆ Hovering settings

---

Set whether to activate hovering function (→P33).

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Hovering settings]

**2** Set required items

## ◆ Privacy view

---

Set whether to make the display less-visible to the people around you.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→Mark/Unmark [Privacy view]

## ◆ Navigation bar

---

Change color of the navigation bar.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Navigation bar]→Select a color

## ◆ Battery icon

---

Change the battery icon.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Battery icon]→Select an icon

## ◆ Auto-rotate screen

---

Set whether to rotate screen according to the terminal orientation.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]

**2** Mark/Unmark [Auto-rotate screen]

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Some applications such as Camera or video recording do not go along to this setting.

## ◆ Best-fit zoom

---

Set whether to zoom in Browser screen automatically when swing of the terminal is detected.

- To use Best-fit zoom, set [Step/Activity counter app] in advance.→P144

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Display]→[Best-fit zoom]→Set each item

## ◆ Intelligent color adjust

---

Set whether to adjust screen color tone depending on surrounding light such as a fluorescent lamp, incandescent lamp and sun light.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → Mark/Unmark [Intelligent color adjust]

## ◆ Shake to unrotate

---

You can return screen rotated by [Auto-rotate screen] to original orientation by shaking the terminal twice or more.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Shake to unrotate] → Set each item

- If [Vibrate feedback] is marked, the terminal vibrates to notify of returning screen orientation.

### ✓INFORMATION

---

- To use this function, operate within 1 minute after the screen is rotated.
- The screen view may not be changed depending on the strength, speed or angle of shaking the terminal.

## ◆ Blue light cut mode

---

Set whether to cut down blue light emitted from the screen.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → Mark/Unmark [Blue light cut mode]

## ◆ Font settings

---

Change display font type.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Font settings] → Set a font → [OK]

- When you select [Original handwriting font], you can create an original font to use. When you select [個別文字編集 (Edit individual letter)], you can replace a created letter and your handwriting letter.

### ✓INFORMATION

---

- Depending on screen, turning the power OFF and ON reflects font settings.
- The font settings may not be reflected or set font may not be displayed correctly on some applications or Web sites.
- Note that if you replace handwritten characters created by [個別文字編集 (Edit individual letter)] in [Original handwriting font] with your own handwritten characters, some characters may be hard to read.

## ◆ Font size

---

Change font size.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Font size] → Select a size

## ◆ Dominant hand

---

Set whether to increase tapping sensitivity by setting tapping hand for one-hand operation.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → [Dominant hand] → Select an item

## ◆ Key misoperation support

Set to enable tap operation even if you touch the edge of screen when you hold the terminal in your hand.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Display] → Mark/Unmark [Key misoperation support]

## Illumination

Set illumination to light when receiving a call, during a call, when turning power ON/OFF, etc.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Illumination]
- 2 Mark/Unmark [Illumination]  
Simple illumination setting : [Theme-based setting] → Select pattern → [OK]  
ON/OFF for each item : Mark/Unmark each item
  - Tap  to check/change the setting value.

### ✓INFORMATION

- The illumination, which lights when a new mail or an SMS arrives, lights for approximately 4 seconds after reception according to this setting. Then, the indicator LED flashes according to each mail setting. However, when [Illumination] is unmarked for the sp-mode mail setting or [LED] is set to OFF for the message setting, the illumination does not light.
- Setting of [At alarm notification] operates for the widget application [Analog clock].

## Multimedia

### ◆ Video correction/Picture correction

Set whether to correct image quality of videos (TV, YouTube, etc.) and still images (Gallery).

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Multimedia]
- 2 Mark/Unmark [Video correction]/[Picture correction]

### ✓INFORMATION

- If videos recorded by Camera or downloaded and saved to microSD card are in the size of 1080p or less, the image quality is corrected at the time of playback.

### ◆ Long-play mode

Set whether to save power when playing MP3/AAC music.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Multimedia]
- 2 Mark/Unmark [Long-play mode]

## ◆ Dolby Digital Plus settings

Set whether to use Dolby Digital Plus for playing video or music.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Multimedia] → [Launch Application]

### 2 Set required items

- Each time you tap , Dolby Digital Plus switches on/off. When switched on,  appears on the status bar.
- To listen to the difference of content when using Dolby Digital Plus and not, tap [Play Demo].
- Tap [Movie]/[Music]/[Game]/[Voice]/[Custom1]/[Custom2] to switch the profile. Tap the selected profile again to show a profile settings screen.
- Tap  to reset the selected profile to the default state.

## Storage

### ◆ Checking the memory space

Check memory space of the terminal, microSD card, USB mass storage connected via USB.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Storage]

### ◆ Erasing data in microSD card (Format)

- Note that this operation erases all data in the microSD card.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Storage] → [Unmount SD card]

- When precautions about unmount SD card appear, Tap [OK].

**2** [Erase SD card] → [Erase SD card]

- When Security unlock method is set, authentication is required.

**3** [Erase everything]

## Battery

Check battery usage status.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Battery]

**2** Check items

- Tapping [App battery check] displays applications affecting battery power consumption such as applications which operate in the background while screen backlight is OFF.

## NX! eco

### ◆ Enabling/Disabling eco-mode

Enable/disable eco-mode.

- When eco-mode is enabled, the notification icon appears on the status bar.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [NX! eco]

**2** [ON]/[OFF]

- When eco-mode stops, a confirmation screen for stopping eco-mode.

### ❖ Advanced settings for eco-mode

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [NX! eco]

**2** [Advanced settings] → Set each item

**Eco level** : Set type of eco level.

- If you select [Light]/[Moderate], tap [Confirm] to see setting values. If you select [Original], tap [Edit] to change to original setting values.

**Battery** : Activate eco-mode when the remaining battery power becomes less than set level.

**Timer** : Activate eco-mode at the set time.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When [Do not execute when plugged in] is marked, eco-mode is canceled while the battery is charging.
- When the terminal is in default status, charge the battery fully and then use this function. If charging is not enough, "Battery care eco-mode" may not activate.

## Apps

### ◆ Viewing permitted operation of the applications in the terminal

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Apps]

**2** Select an application

### ◆ Deleting application data or cache

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Apps]

**2** Select an application → [Clear data]/[Clear cache]

- When [Clear data] is selected, tap [OK].

## ◆ Uninstall application

- For deleting the applications you obtained from Play Store, operating from the Google Play screen is recommended.→ P76
- You cannot uninstall some pre-installed applications by default. And if pre-installed applications are uninstalled, you can reset the terminal to restore.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Apps]

**2** Select an application→[Uninstall]→[OK]

## ◆ Disabling applications

- Disabling application is available for some applications and services that cannot be uninstalled. Disabled applications are not displayed on the screen (→P49) displayed by tapping  from the Home screen or cannot be launched either. But they are not uninstalled.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[Apps]

**2** Select an application→[Disable]/[Enable]

- When [Disable] is selected, tap [OK].

### ✓INFORMATION

- When you disable an application, some other applications linked to the disabled application may not be operated correctly. In such case, enable the application again to operate them correctly.

## docomo service

Set docomo service.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→[docomo service]

**2** Set required items

**Application manager** : Set periodical update check etc.

**docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection** : Set docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection.

**Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps** : Set to use docomo service using the Wi-Fi function.

**docomo apps password** : Set password for applications provided by docomo. By default, "0000" is set.

**AUTO-GPS** : Set AUTO-GPS functions etc.

**docomo location information** : Set location information functions for imadoco search, imadoco kantan search and Keitai-Osagashi Service.

**Data usage check** : Set data usage cycle or start/stop measuring for Data usage check.

**SD card backup** : Back up and restore data saved in the terminal.→P108

**Send device error information** : Set to send error information to the server managed by docomo.

**Open source licenses** : Show open source licenses.

## Lock/Security

### ◆ Security codes for the terminal

Some functions provided for convenient use of the terminal require the security code to use them. Besides the security code for locking the terminal, the network security code necessary for the network services etc. are available. Make use of the terminal using an appropriate security code according to your purpose.

#### Notes on the security codes

- To set a security code, avoid imaginable numbers such as "birth date", "a part of phone number", "street address or room number", "1111" or "1234". Maintain a separate record not to forget the numbers.
- Be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If a security code is misused by others, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for damages resulted from it.
- If you forget your security codes, you need to bring a document (a driver's license etc.) to identify your subscription, the terminal and the docomo mini UIM card to a docomo Shop. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

- The PUK code is written on a subscription form (copy for user) handed at subscription in a docomo Shop. For users subscribed in other than docomo Shop, bring a document (a drivers license etc.) to identify your subscription and the docomo mini UIM card to a docomo Shop, or contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

### ◆ Network security code

The network security code is a 4-digit number necessary for identification or using the docomo Network Services at reception of your request in docomo Shop or at a docomo Shop, docomo Information Center or "お客様サポート (Customer support)". It can be set any number at the subscription and also changed later by yourself. You can change your network security code to the new one using the PC if you have the "docomoID/Password" for the "My docomo" General support site for PC. If you use dmenu, dmenu→"お客様サポート (Customer support)"→You can change them yourself from "各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)" (in Japanese only).

- \* For "My docomo", "お客様サポート (Customer support)", see P211 (for the "Instruction Manual" application, "マナーもいっしょに携帯しましょう (Use mobile phone with your manners!)" in "付録 (Appendix)").

## ❖ PIN code

---

Security code called as PIN code can be set in the docomo mini UIM card. The code is set to "0000" at subscription, which you can change by yourself. →P134

PIN is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) that must be entered each time you insert the docomo mini UIM card into the terminal or when the terminal is powered ON for user confirmation to prevent unauthorized use of the docomo mini UIM card by a third party. Entering the PIN code enables making/receiving calls and terminal operation.

- For using the docomo mini UIM card that you have used on another terminal by inserting to this terminal, use the set PIN code on the former terminal. If you did not change the setting, the code is "0000".
- If you enter a wrong PIN code 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked and cannot be used anymore. In this case, unlock with "PUK". Unlock the PIN code before setting new PIN code.
- When docomo mini UIM card is locked by PIN or PUK, remove the docomo mini UIM card. The Home screen will appear and you can perform communication using Wi-Fi function.

## ❖ PUK code

---

The PUK code is an 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you enter a wrong PUK code 10 times consecutively, the docomo mini UIM card is locked. Please contact a docomo Shop.

- When docomo mini UIM card is locked by PIN or PUK, remove the docomo mini UIM card. The Home screen will appear and you can perform communication using Wi-Fi function.

## ❖ microSD password

---

You can set a password to a microSD card. If you use the microSD card with password set by inserting to another phone, password authentication on the phone is required. If you insert it to a PC or phone without password setting function, use of data or formatting cannot be made.

- Some microSD cards may not support this function.

## ◆ Setting PIN code

---

### ❖ Set up SIM/RUIM card lock

---

Set PIN code to be entered when the terminal is turned ON.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → [Set up SIM/RUIM card lock]

**2** [Lock SIM card] → Enter the PIN code → [OK]

- To cancel the setting, [Lock SIM card] → Enter PIN code → [OK] to unmark.

### ✓ INFORMATION

---

- When entering the PIN code for the first time, enter "0000".

## ❖ Changing PIN code

---

Set the PIN code (mark [Lock SIM card]) in advance.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → [Set up SIM/RUIM card lock]
- 2 [Change SIM PIN]
- 3 Enter the current PIN code → [OK]
- 4 Enter the new PIN code → [OK]
- 5 Re-enter the new PIN code → [OK]

## ❖ Entering PIN code

---

- 1 Turn power ON → Enter PIN code on the PIN code entry screen → 

## ❖ Disabling PIN lock

---

If PIN code is locked, unlock PIN and set new PIN code.

- 1 Enter PUK code in the PIN code entry screen → 
- 2 Enter the new PIN code → 
- 3 Re-enter the new PIN code → 

## ◆ Screen lock

---

The lock screen can be displayed to prevent misoperation.

## ❖ Selecting lock

---

Set to display the lock screen or authenticate on the lock screen when returning from the sleep mode.

- To select [Security on], set security unlock preference in advance. → P135

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]
- 2 [Select lock] → Select an item

## ❖ Locking/Unlocking screen

---

### ■ Lock

- 1  / Press the fingerprint sensor

The terminal goes into sleep mode and the screen is locked.

### ■ Unlock

- 1 In sleep mode, press  / the fingerprint sensor → On the lock screen, 

- Depending on the lock selection (→ P134), authentication is operated on the lock screen.
- For fingerprint authentication, if you press the fingerprint sensor in Step 1, release your finger from the fingerprint sensor and then slide with the registered fingerprint to unlock.
- When the fingerprint authentication is not available, you can authenticate by tapping other unlocking method button.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- When you select [Security on] and from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → Mark [Power button instantly locks], the screen is locked by pressing /the fingerprint sensor soon. To cancel the screen lock, authentication is needed.
- When you operate from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → Mark [Slide left to activate camera], on the lock screen, flick left to display camera startup screen.

## ❖ Setting wallpaper on the lock screen

Set wallpaper for lock screen.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** [Lock screen wallpaper] → Select an item

## ❖ Showing owner information on lock screen

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** [Owner info] → Enter owner information

- If [Show owner info on lock screen] is unmarked, mark it.

## ◆ Security lock

By setting to require authentication on the locked screen, you can prevent others from misusing the terminal.

## ❖ Setting security unlock preference

Set type of authentication operation for unlocking the screen lock.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → [Security unlock preference]

**2** Authenticate

- To set for the first time, authentication is not required.

**3** Select an unlock preference

**Pattern** : Set to unlock by a pattern connecting at least 4 points.

**Security code** : Set to unlock by a security code ( 4- to 16-digit number).

**Password** : Set to unlock by a password (which consists of 4 to 16 alphanumeric/symbols).

**Fingerprint** : Set to unlock by fingerprint authentication.

- For using fingerprint authentication, confirm the precautions (→P137) and then register fingerprint.
- To set security unlock preference for the first time after fingerprint is registered, tap [Fingerprint] and authenticate with fingerprint.

**Face recognition** : Set to unlock by face recognition. For other security unlock except screen lock, use the unlock preference selected for backup lock.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- To hide the pattern when unlocking, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → Unmark [Make pattern visible].
- To hide the characters when entering the password, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → Unmark [Make passwords visible].
- To set to require blinking for face recognition, from the Home Screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → Mark [Liveness check].
- If you use authentication storage, only security code and password are available for unlock preference.
- If you use authentication storage and set unlock preference in combination with fingerprint, fingerprint authentication may not be available temporarily after turning the power OFF and ON. In this case, authenticating with unlock preference in combination with the fingerprint once makes fingerprint authentication available.

## ❖ Locking screen automatically

When you select [Security on] in Select lock and set time elapses after sleep mode, the screen is locked automatically.

- You need to set the security unlock preference in advance. → P135

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** [Automatically lock] → Select a time

## ❖ When you forget unlocking method

When you forget unlocking method of lock screen, set a security unlock preference according to the followings and then unlock.

- If you fail unlocking screen 5 times, retry 30 seconds later.
- Even when the lock screen is not unlocked, you can make an emergency call from the unlocking screen. → P54
- If you do not sign in to Google account, the operation is unavailable.

**1** On the unlocking screen, [Forgot Pattern]/[Forgot security code?]/[Forgot password?] → Sign in to Google account → According to the onscreen instructions, set a new security unlock preference

## ◆ Fingerprint authentication function

---

Fingerprint authentication is an authentication sliding your finger over the fingerprint sensor.

## ❖ Precautions for using fingerprint authentication

---

Precautions for using fingerprint authentication are as follows:

- This function is used to authenticate the information on the characteristics of fingerprint image. For this reason, user with fingerprint that does not provide enough characteristics information may not be able to use the fingerprint authentication.
- Scanning 3 times or more with the same finger is needed to register your fingerprint. Do not use different fingers to register.
- Authentication performance (the probability of successful fingerprint authentication for correct sliding of the finger) depends on the condition of use. The following finger conditions may make fingerprint registration difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Taking measures according to the condition of your finger including washing hands, wiping hands, using a different finger for fingerprint authentication, etc. may improve the authentication performance.
  - Finger is wrinkled after taking a bath etc., wet or sweaty
  - Finger is sweaty or oily enough to obscure ridges of fingertip, or is soiled with dirt or oil
  - Rough or damaged (cut, inflamed, etc.)
  - Extremely dry or having tendency to get dry
  - Became fat or thin to cause the fingerprint to change
  - Fingerprint unclear by wearing away
- Surface in a condition extremely different from that at the time of fingerprint registration
- For registration/authentication of your fingerprint, align the first joint of one of your fingers to the center of the sensor, press your finger parallel to the sensor and slide it downward until it passes the fingerprint sensor area. To prevent authentication failure due to difference in finger positions at registration and authentication, keep your finger parallel to the terminal as you slide it.
- If the sliding movement is too fast or too slow, the fingerprint may not be correctly recognized.
- Registration/Authentication of fingerprint may be difficult with your thumb as the center of the whorl of the fingerprint may be displaced or distorted. Try as much as possible to slide your finger so that the center of the whorl of the fingerprint passes the center of the fingerprint sensor.
- If the fingerprint is not correctly read, a warning message appears.
- If fingerprint registration or authentication is started with the finger put on the fingerprint sensor, activation may be unavailable. Put the finger off from the fingerprint sensor and retry the operation.
- When connecting the terminal using a USB cable to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC, make sure that the device is grounded in advance. If the connected device is not grounded, fingerprint authentication may be unavailable. In that case, remove the terminal from the device and then perform fingerprint authentication.
- Fingerprint authentication technology does not guarantee complete identity authentication or verification. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any damage caused by use of this product or unavailability of this product.

## ❖ Usage precautions for fingerprint sensor

---

Usage precautions for fingerprint sensor are as follows:

- The sheet on the fingerprint sensor is a protective film to maintain waterproofness. Do not remove or poke the film with a pointed object such as a pen.
- The fingerprint sensor is waterproof, however malfunction may occur if water or dirt adheres to the surface of the fingerprint sensor or your finger. Wipe any water or dirt with a soft cloth before use. Also wrinkled finger with water may cause malfunction.
- The following conditions may cause failure or damage:
  - Strike or give a hard shock
  - Scratch or pick with a pointed object
  - Rub hard with a fingernail or hard object such as metal piece of strap and scratch the surface of the fingerprint sensor
  - Scratch or stain the surface of the fingerprint sensor with soil etc.
  - Cover with a sticker or paint with ink etc.
- The following conditions may make fingerprint scanning difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor from time to time.
  - Dirt of dust, sebum, etc. attachment or condensation of moisture of sweat etc.
- When the following phenomenon occurs, clean the surface of fingerprint sensor. The phenomenon may be improved.
  - Fingerprint registration or authentication fails often
- To clean the fingerprint sensor, wipe its surface with a dry, soft and static-free cloth. Long-term use may cause the fingerprint sensor to get dusty, but do not try to remove the dust with a pointed object even in such a case.

- Static electricity may cause malfunction. Before placing the finger on the fingerprint sensor, eliminate static electricity by touching a metal object with the hand etc. Take particular care in dry seasons such as winter.

## ❖ Registering fingerprint

---

Register your fingerprint for authentication.

- To use fingerprint authentication, register 2 or more fingerprints. Up to 10 fingerprints can be registered.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Security] → [Fingerprint settings]

- When Security unlock preference is set, authentication is required. Even when the Security unlock preference is not set, if you have already registered fingerprint, authentication by fingerprint is required.

### 2 Select a finger to register → Following the onscreen message, put your finger onto the fingerprint sensor and then slide

- Register second fingerprint in the same operation.

**Deleting a registered fingerprint : Select a finger to delete**  
→ [Yes]

- When the security unlock preference is set to fingerprint authentication, you cannot delete the registrations if there are 2 registrations in all.

### 3 [OK]

## ❖ Operating fingerprint authentication

---

### 1 When a fingerprint authentication screen is displayed, slide the registered finger on the fingerprint sensor

- If the authentication failed, remove the finger from the fingerprint sensor and retry authentication.

## ◆ Application lock

---

Set applications that require authentication for activation.

- You need to set the security unlock preference in advance. → P135

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Security]

### 2 [Application lock] → Authenticate → Set each item

## ◆ Encrypt phone

---

Encrypt all data (including settings and applications) in the terminal. After encryption, you need to enter security code or password to decrypt each time you turn the terminal on. To disable encryption, you need to reset the terminal to default.

- Set [Security code] or [Password] for the security unlock preference in advance. → P135

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Security]

### 2 [Encrypt phone] → [Encrypt phone] → Authenticate → [Encrypt phone]

## ✓ INFORMATION - - - - -

- After encrypted, security code or password entry screen appears each time the terminal is powered on. Note that you cannot return to the password entry screen if you touch and hold ";" on the keypad and tap , then select [Input language]/[Android keyboard settings]. In that case, reboot the terminal.

If you change the settings and restart the terminal, the setting of [Input language]/[Android keyboard settings] is not changed.

## ◆ Password manager

---

Register and manage your authentication information such as an ID (account) or password. You can quote the registered contents to enter.

- You need to set the security unlock preference in advance. → P135
- Up to 50 items can be registered.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → [Password manager] → Authenticate

**2** [Register] → Set each item → [OK]

**Editing password** : Tap a title → Edit each item → [OK]

**Deleting password** : Touch and hold the title → Drag & drop it on  at the bottom of the screen → [OK]

## ◆ Displaying recently used applications

---

Set whether to display recently used applications when you touch and hold .

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** Mark/Unmark [Hide recently used app]

## ◆ Privacy mode

---

If Privacy mode is set, you can hide bookmarks for browser, pictures, or applications (when Home application is set to NX!Home). If you download application compatible with Privacy mode, you can hide phonebook entries, mails of specified persons and can set not to notify incoming calls and mails from the related persons.

- It is compatible with NX! Contact and NX! Mail. Follow the onscreen instructions shown on the way in operations of "Privacy mode operation settings (Phonebook/History)" (→ P141) to download the application and use it. After download, make sure to read "Terms of use" and then install it.

## ◆ Notes when using Privacy mode

---

- For descriptions, notes or compatible applications for Privacy mode, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → [Privacy Mode Settings] → Authenticate → [Function description/notes] to refer.
- Privacy mode can be set only for phonebook in FUJITSU account. If you change docomo account to FUJITSU account, data added by i-concier, name card data, SNS account information are not saved.
- When you set Privacy mode to a phonebook entry registered to Favorites or Group, account is changed automatically and registered information is changed to be hidden in Favorites or Group.
- This function is not compatible with sp-mode mail.

## ❖ Privacy Mode Settings

---

- You need to set the security unlock preference in advance. → P135

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Security] → [Privacy Mode Settings] → Authenticate

- When a confirmation screen for privacy mode appears for the first activation, tap [Use].

### 2 Mark/Unmark [Privacy mode]

- When notes appears, confirm the content and tap [Close]. If you tap [Display notes], check each item and tap .

## ❖ Privacy mode operation settings (Phonebook/History)

---

Specify a phonebook entry to be hidden.

- To make operation settings for Phonebook/History, install NX! Contact. If you did not install yet, follow the onscreen instructions on the way of operation to download.

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Security] → [Privacy Mode Settings] → Authenticate

### 2 [Call/Mail privacy] → Set each item

**Phonebook/History** : Set whether to hide specified phonebook entry/group in privacy mode.

**Phonebook setting** : Specify phonebook entry/group to be hidden.

- When [Change account] screen appears in the phonebook entry list/group list, tap [OK].

## ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When you specify a group, privacy mode is set to the phonebook entry registered into the group. To cancel privacy mode in case of changing group, etc., cancel privacy mode for phonebook.
- When privacy mode for a group is canceled, privacy mode set for phonebook entry registered into the group is also canceled. In this time, phonebook entry registered into several groups can be viewed even if privacy mode is still set to the other groups. In such case, newly set groups.

## ❖ Privacy mode operation settings (Action when call received)

---

Set actions for incoming call or mail.

- Specify phonebook in "Privacy mode operation settings (Phonebook/History)". → P141

### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Security] → [Privacy Mode Settings] → Authenticate

### 2 [Call/Mail privacy] → Set each item

**Action when call received** : Set action for incoming call from specified phonebook entry/group in privacy mode.

**Action when mail received** : Set action for receiving mail from specified phonebook entry/group in privacy mode.

## ❖ Privacy mode operation settings (Others privacy)

---

You can specify to hide icons, folders or bookmarks of Browser, albums or images in Gallery on the application list (when Home application is set to NX!Home).

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security] → [Privacy Mode Settings] → Authenticate

**2** [Others privacy] → Set each item

**Home/Browser/Picture** : Set to hide icons of specified applications on the Home screen/Slide-in launcher or in the theater mode or hide specified bookmarks, folders/albums or images during privacy mode.

**Home setting/Browser setting/Picture setting** : Specify applications, bookmarks, folders/albums, images to be hidden.

**Action for app notifications** : Set whether to hide notifications from application in privacy mode.

- Notifications from applications are shown only when from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Show notifications] in [Apps] is marked. If it is not marked, notifications are hidden regardless of the setting.

**Dictionary for predictive text input** : Set NX!input predictive conversion dictionary used in privacy mode.

**Receive indicator** : Set whether to notify you of incoming calls/receiving mails from the phonebook/group specified to hide by changing battery icon type in privacy mode.

## ❖ Activate/Deactivate options for privacy mode

---

Set activating and deactivating operation of privacy mode.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** [Privacy Mode Settings] → Authenticate → [Activate/Deactivate options] → [Deactivation option]/[Auto launch] → Select an item

- If you select [Launch during sleep] in [Auto launch] and the screen turns off with privacy mode deactivated, privacy mode becomes active when the screen turns on next time.

## ❖ Activating/Deactivating Privacy mode

---

**1** Flick the time display section to the right with the Notification panel opened/Press the fingerprint sensor for 1 second or more

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- If you press and hold the fingerprint sensor for 1 second or more when an application is started, it may not work properly.

## ◆ Permitting to install unknown sources applications

---

Permit to install applications obtained from sites other than Play Store, mails, etc.

- To protect the terminal and personal data, download applications only from trusted sources such as Play Store etc.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]
- 2** Mark [Unknown sources] → Confirm precautions and [OK]

## ◆ Checking applications to install

---

Prohibit installing applications that may cause harm or display a warning screen before installing.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]
- 2** Mark/Unmark [Verify apps]

## ◆ Managing authentication information

---

You can install authentication information for accessing VPNs etc. or other certificates from a microSD card.

### ❖ Displaying credential authentication information or certificates

---

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]
- 2** [Trusted credentials]

### ❖ Installing authentication information or certificate

---

Installing authentication information or certificates from a microSD card.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]
- 2** [Install from SD card] → Select the authentication information/certificate you want to install
- 3** If necessary, enter the password → [OK]
- 4** Enter the name of the authentication information/certificate → [OK]

## ❖ Clearing credentials

Clear all authentication information or certificates from the authentication storage.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** [Clear credentials] → [OK]

## ◆ SD card password settings

Set a password to microSD card to prevent others from misusing.

- Some microSD cards may not support this function.
- You need to set the security unlock preference in advance. → P135

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Security]

**2** [SD card password settings] → Authenticate

### **3** Set required items

- When precautions about unmount SD card appear, tap [OK].

**Register password** : Register microSD password (within 16 one-byte numbers).

- 1 password per a microSD card and up to 20 passwords can be registered. When number of registrations exceeds the limit, the oldest registration is deleted to register a new one.

**Authenticate password** : Authenticate microSD card to which a password is set on another terminal.

**Change password** : Change SD card password.

**Delete password** : Delete SD card password.

**Forcibly delete password** : Delete all data including microSD card password.

### ■ When a password is set to microSD card

Password authentication is required when the microSD card is attached to other terminal. If you attach it to a PC or a phone without password setting function, using the data or formatting cannot be made.

## My physical profile

Set basic information for fitness applications or widgets, Voice adjust, Step/Activity counter, etc.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In PERSONAL, [More...] → [My physical profile]

### **2** Set required items

**User information** : Set birthday, height, weight, etc.

**Voice adjust** : Set sound quality that can be easily heard for you. → P55

**Best view adjust** : Adjust screen color shade matching your age.

**Step/Activity counter app** : Set Step/Activity counter app.

## ❖ Precautions on using Step/Activity counter

- To count steps accurately, it is recommended that you wear the pedometer correctly (place it in a carrying case and attach the case to the waist belt etc. or when putting the terminal in a bag, put it in a pocket or between partitions), and walk at the speed of 100-120 steps per minute.
- Even when you wear Step/Activity counter correctly, if your walking or movement does not reach to the terminal like when moving part of body such as only hands or feet, your steps or activity amount may not be counted accurately.
- Steps may not be counted accurately in the following cases.
  - When the terminal moves randomly as the bag you put the terminal in hits your legs or hip, or when hanging the terminal down from your hip or bag.
  - When shuffling, walking randomly wearing sandals or geta (wooden clogs), or when your walking pace was slowed down because of walking in the crowded area etc.
  - When you had a lot of up-and-down motions, shaking or horizontal movements such as repeating standing and sitting, climbing up and down steep slope or stairs, or getting on a vehicle (bicycle, car, train, bus, etc.)
  - When you jogged or did some sports other than walking, or walked extremely slowly.
- When shaking or swinging the terminal, counting steps/ activity may not be performed accurately.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- At the beginning of walking, the figure is not changed because the Pedometer is judging to prevent miscount whether you started walking. As a guide, when you walked for about 4 seconds, the steps to there are added at a time.

- Counted number of steps/amount of activity is saved approximately every 60 minutes.
- By malfunction, repair or other treatments of the terminal, the information of steps and activity may be lost. Note that, even if the information of steps are lost, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

## Slide-in function

Set a function which allows you to activate an application by sliding your finger from the edge of the screen and to capture screen as an image.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In PERSONAL, [More...] → [Slide-in function]

**2** [ON] at the top right of the screen → Set each item

- Tap [Function Description] to show how to use Slide-in function and Capture & Draw.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When applications registered to the launcher are updated, the registration may be canceled.

## Language & input

- For NX!input settings, see "Setting NX!input and ATOK".→P37
- For switching other keyboard such as Android keyboard, see "Switching to other input method".→P37

### ◆ Switching to English display

Change the language to be used to English.

- 1 From the Home screen, →[本体設定 (Settings)]→In ユーザー設定 (PERSONAL), [その他... (More...)]→[言語と入力 (Language & input)]→[Language]

### 2 [English]

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Some applications are not displayed in English.
- To change to the Japanese display, operate as follows.  
From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In PERSONAL, [More...]→[Language & input]→[言語 (Language)]→[日本語 (Japanese)]

### ◆ Registering words

- 1 From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In PERSONAL, [More...]→[Language & input]
- 2 [Personal dictionary]→

### 3 Set required items

**PHRASE** : Register words.

**Shortcut** : Display a phrase as a conversion candidate for entered characters.

**Language** : Set a language to which a registered word is saved.

### ◆ Setting the Android keyboard

Set key operation tone of the Android keyboard, auto-correction of text, etc.

- 1 From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In PERSONAL, [More...]→[Language & input]
- 2  for [Android keyboard]→Set each item

### ◆ Setting voice search

Setting Google voice search

- 1 From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In PERSONAL, [More...]→[Language & input]
- 2 [Voice Search]→Set each item
  - Language** : Set language for Google voice search.
  - Speech output** : Set whether to use voice input.
  - Block offensive words** : Set whether to display improper search results.
  - Download offline speech recognition** : Set to use voice input offline.
  - Bluetooth headset\***
    - \* The terminal is not compatible.

## ◆ Text-to-speech

Set the read out speed for text-to-speech plug-in.

- Text-to-speech plug-in in Japanese is not supported by default.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In PERSONAL, [More...] → [Language & input]
- 2 [Text-to-speech output] → [Speech rate] → Select a rate

## Adding an account

### ◆ Adding accounts

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 [Add account] → Select account type → Set each item  
**Setting account:** Select an account type → Set an account → Set each item

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Multiple Google accounts can be added on the terminal.
- Tapping free area other than displayed screen may cancel operation.
- When you set Google account for the first time, [Backup and restore] screen appears. Because the terminal does not support the function, data will not be backed up even if you mark [Keep this phone backed up with my Google Account].

## ◆ Removing accounts

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 Select an account type → Select an account →  → [Remove account] → [Remove account]

#### ✓INFORMATION

- docomo account and FUJITSU account cannot be removed.

### ◆ Starting synchronization manually

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 Select an account type → Select an account →  → [Sync now]

### ❖ Canceling sync

- 1 During synchronization,  → [Cancel sync]

## Date & time

Make the settings of date and time.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Date & time]
- 2 Set required items
  - When you unmark [Automatic date & time]/[Automatic time zone], you can set date, time zone, and time manually.

## Accessibility

Make the settings for supporting user operations.

- For the first activation, a confirmation screen asking if you use the screen reader appears.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Accessibility]

**2** Set required items

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- When [Power button ends call] is marked, pressing  during a call ends the call. To cancel sleep mode, press the fingerprint sensor.

## About phone

Display various information of the terminal.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings]

**2** [About phone] → Check items

**Software Update** : Update software to latest one. → P180

**Upgrade Android software** : Upgrade the OS of the terminal. → P184

**Status** : Check battery status, phone number, network name and address, IMEI (individual serial number), etc.

**Legal information/Auth** : Check Open source license, the Terms of use of Google or information of certificate or compliant marks.

**Model number/Android version/Baseband version/**

**Kernel version/Build number** : Check each version or number.

# File management

## Storage (Internal storage)

Folders in the internal storage and data saved in each folder by default are as follows.

DCIM	xxxFJDCF	Still images/videos taken with the camera
Music		Music files
Podcasts		Files from Podcast (e.g. programs delivered via the Internet)
Ringtones		Phone ringtone
Alarms		Alarm sound
Notifications		Notification sound
Pictures		Still images (except those taken with the camera)
Movies		Videos (except those taken with the camera)
Download		Files downloaded by Browser etc.
.fjprivacy		Privacy mode information
Android		Temporary files of installed applications
ARROWS Movie		Pre-installed videos by default
Premium Photo		Pre-installed still images by default

## microSD card (External storage)

### ◆ microSD card

- The terminal supports microSD card of up to 2 GB, microSDHC card and microSDHC UHS-I card of up to 32 GB, microSDXC card and microSDXC UHS-I card of up to 64 GB (as of June, 2013).
- Note that DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations of all microSD cards. For information on compatible microSD cards, contact manufacturers of microSD cards.
- Do not turn the power OFF or give shock while accessing data on the microSD card. The data may corrupt.

### ✓INFORMATION

- A microSDXC card can be used only on a compatible device. Inserting a microSDXC card into a non-microSDXC-compatible device may damage or destroy data saved on the microSDXC card. Do not insert one. If you want to reuse a microSDXC card on which data is destroyed, format microSDXC card (all data will be erased) on an SDXC-compatible device.
- When copying data to/from a non-SDXC-compatible device, use a microSDHC card or microSD card complying with standards of device to share data.
- The terminal supports Class 10 speed microSD card.

## ◆ Installing/Removing microSD card

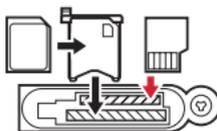
- Install/Remove after unmounting (→P129) or turning OFF the power.

### ■ Installing

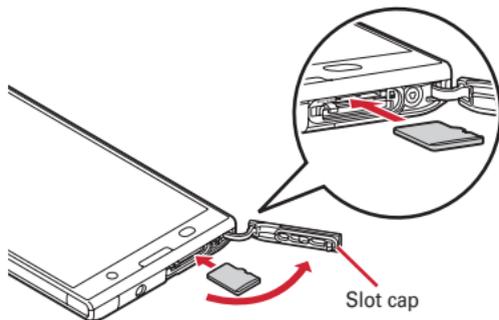
#### ① Open the slot cap of the terminal →P21

- Opening the slot cap reveals microSD card slot on the display side and docomo mini UIM card slot on the back side of the terminal

docomo mini UIM card      microSD card



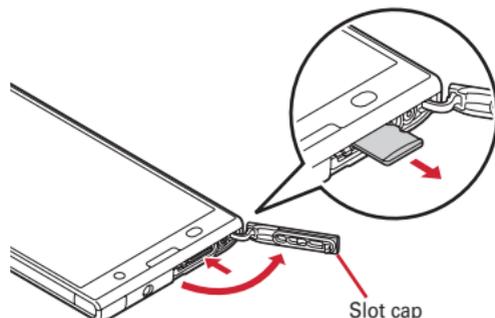
#### ② With the metal contacts side facing down, insert a microSD card into the microSD card slot until it clicks



#### ③ Close the slot cap of the terminal →P21

### ■ Removing

- ① Open the slot cap of the terminal, then push the microSD card lightly and then release it, then pull the microSD card straight out
- ② Close the slot cap of the terminal →P21



### ✓ INFORMATION

- Note that the microSD card may jump out of the terminal when removing it.

## File operations

You can manage data saved in the internal storage and microSD card (rename/delete/copy/move a folder and a file).

**1** From the Home screen,  → [KSfilemanager]

**2**  → [File Manager] → Touch and hold a folder/file

- Tap a file to display/play.
- Tap [Home]/[SD Card] at the top of screen to switch displaying storage and tap [Up] to move to the folder at an upper level.
-  → Tap [Help] to show how to use File Manager.
-  → Tap [Make a new folder] to create a new folder.

**3** Select operation

**Copy** : Copy a folder/file.

**Move** : Cut the folder/file.

**Delete** : Delete a folder/file.

**Copy to**  : Copy to a folder that you select a folder/file.

**Move to**  : Move to a folder that you select a folder/file.

**Rename** : Rename a folder/file.

**Add to Bookmark** : Add the folder/file to Bookmark.

**Send To** : Send the folder/file.

**ZIP** : ZIP compress the folder/file.

**UnZip** : Decompress the zipped folder/file.

**Property** : Display property of the folder/file.

**Cancel** : Close operation menu.

# Data communication

## Infrared communication

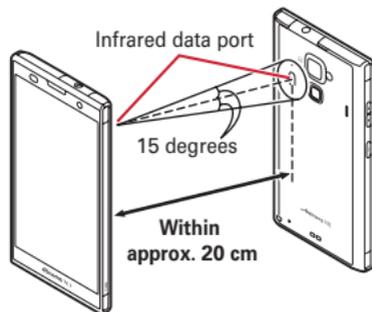
You can send or receive data to or from another terminal or mobile terminal supporting infrared communication.

- Transferable data via infrared communication is as follows.  
Phonebook\*, My profile, still pictures, videos, ToruCa, name card, sp-mode mail\*, schedule & memo\*

\* Sending all data is supported.

- The communication range for infrared communication is approximately 20 cm or less, and the infrared ray radiation angle is 15 degrees or less from the center. Keep the terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until data sending/receiving completes.
- Infrared communication may not be performed in areas exposed to direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lights or near other infrared devices.

- Depending on the terminal of the other party, it may be difficult to exchange data.



### ❖ Sending My profile via infrared communication

- From the Home screen, → [docomo phonebook]
- [My profile] → → [Send via infrared]
  - When a screen for selecting items to send appears, select [send my profile] and tap [OK].
- [OK] → Set the receiver to the receive stand-by mode → [OK]

## ❖ Sending one item via infrared

---

<Example> Sending a phonebook entry

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook]
- 2 [Contacts] →  → [Others] → [Send via Infrared] → [Send one] → Select contacts to send → [OK] → Set the receiver to the receive stand-by mode → [OK]

## ❖ Sending all items via infrared

---

<Example> Sending all phonebook entries

- For sending all, set a docomo apps password in advance. → P131

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [docomo phonebook]
- 2 [Contacts] →  → [Others] → [Send via Infrared] → [Send all] → [Start] → Enter the docomo apps password → [OK] → Enter the same authentication password as the receiver → [OK] → [OK] → Set the receiver to the receive stand-by mode → [OK]

## ❖ Receiving via infrared communication

---

<Example> Receiving a phonebook entry

- For receiving all, set a docomo apps password in advance. → P131

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Infrared]
  - 2 [Receive] → [OK] → [OK] → [OK]  
**Receive all phonebook entries :** [Receive all] → Enter the docomo apps password → [OK] → Enter the same authentication password as the one entered on the sender → [OK] → [OK] → [OK] → [Save]
- If an account selection screen appears, select an account.

## Bluetooth® communication

You can connect the terminal and a Bluetooth device to perform wireless communication or play voice sound or music.

- Note that using Bluetooth connection makes battery consumption faster.
- Wireless communication is not guaranteed for all Bluetooth devices.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- For information on compatible Bluetooth version, profiles, etc., see "Main specifications". →P186
- Full Seg/1Seg sound can be only played back with A2DP compatible Bluetooth device that supports SCMS-T content protection method.
- For operations of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

### ❖ Handling precautions when using Bluetooth function

- Connect with another Bluetooth device keeping the line-of-sight distance to 10 m or shorter. Distance available for connection may be shorter if obstacles exist between the terminal and the Bluetooth device or depending on surrounding (wall, furniture, etc.).
- Place a Bluetooth device as far as possible from other electric appliances, audio visual devices and office appliances. A microwave oven strongly affects the connection when it is operated. Connection may not be established correctly when other devices are powered on, or the connection may cause noises on TV or radio or reception difficulty.

- Under strong ambient signals, connection may not be established.
- Radio waves emitted by a Bluetooth device may affect electronic medical equipment. Turn off the terminal and other Bluetooth devices in a train, aircraft or hospital, near an automatic door or fire alarm, and at a place where flammable gases are generated such as a gas station. Otherwise, under certain circumstances, an accident may result.

### ❖ Radio wave interference with wireless LAN

Because a Bluetooth device and wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g/n) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz), if the device is used near a device with wireless LAN capability, radio wave interference may occur, and communication speed may be reduced, noise may occur, or connection may not be established. In this case, turn the wireless LAN device power off, or move the terminal and the Bluetooth device away at least 10 m from the wireless LAN device.

### ◆ Bluetooth function ON/OFF

Set Bluetooth to ON to use Bluetooth function. When you do not use Bluetooth, set it to OFF in order to cut the battery power consumption.

- When activated,  appears on the status bar.
- Turning the power OFF does not change Bluetooth ON/OFF setting.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings]

**2** [Bluetooth] to [ON]/[OFF]

- When the screen about aptX appears, tap [OK].

## ◆ Connecting with registered Bluetooth devices

---

Connect Bluetooth device. You can talk or play back sounds or music using a Bluetooth device, or exchange data to or from a Bluetooth device. And you can enter characters on the terminal with Bluetooth compatible keyboard.

- Set a Bluetooth device to connection stand-by mode in advance.
- When connected,  appears on the status bar.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings]

**2** [Bluetooth]

- If Bluetooth devices do not appear, tap [Not visible to other Bluetooth devices]/[Only visible to paired devices] to switch to [Visible to all nearby Bluetooth devices], then tap [SEARCH FOR DEVICES].

**3** Tap a detected Bluetooth device → Enter a passcode (PIN) as required and [OK]/[Pair]

■ When connection is requested from another Bluetooth device

If a Bluetooth pair setting request screen appears, enter a pass code (PIN) if necessary and tap [OK], or tap [Pair].

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- A message notifying that communication charges may become high appears when connecting with DUN (Dial-Up Network Profile).

## ◆ Sending or receiving data to or from Bluetooth device

---

You can send data such as Gallery (→P99) and contacts or receive data from a Bluetooth device.

- Set a Bluetooth device to connection stand-by mode in advance.

<Example> Sending files in Gallery

**1** Open Gallery and touch and hold an image

**2**  → [See all] → [Bluetooth] / 

**3** Tap a Bluetooth device

Open the Notification panel to check if transmission is completed.

<Example> Receiving files from a Bluetooth device

**1** Send files from a Bluetooth device

**2** After file arrival is notified, open the Notification panel → [Bluetooth share: Incoming file] → [Accept]

- To check received files, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [Bluetooth] →  → [Show received files].

## ◆ Canceling connection with a Bluetooth device

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 [Bluetooth] → Tap a Bluetooth device → [OK]

## ◆ Unpairing from Bluetooth device

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 [Bluetooth] →  for a Bluetooth device → [Unpair]

## ◆ Renaming a Bluetooth device

---

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings]
- 2 [Bluetooth] →  for a Bluetooth device → [Rename] → Enter the device name → [OK]

## ◆ Bluetooth Low Energy Settings

---

Set notification for Bluetooth Low Energy device.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Bluetooth Low Energy Settings]

### 2 Set required items

**Alert Notification** : Set whether to notify of incoming calls, new email, etc. to compatible devices.

**Find Me Ringtone** : Set ringtone emitted when receiving notification from compatible devices.

**Proximity** : Set notification level for compatible devices when connection is canceled.

- Connecting compatible device again is needed for reflecting this setting.

**Time** : Set whether to synchronize time with a Time-compatible device.

- Regardless of the setting, time on the terminal is synchronized with paired Time-compatible device. When the setting is on, time on a Time-compatible device is synchronized with the terminal even if the time on the terminal changes after pairing is complete.

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- Find Me Ringtone in Bluetooth Low Energy setting is emitted regardless of the Manner mode and Public mode settings.

## NFC communication

NFC is an abbreviation for Near Field Communication and a short range wireless communication method of international standard defined by ISO (International Organization for Standardization). You can use a contactless IC card function, Reader/Writer function (Reader/Writer), Peer-to-Peer communications function (P2P), etc.

You can send/receive data to/from another NFC compatible device using NFC function.

- For notes when holding over the other device→P78

### ◆ Android Beam

Transfer data between the terminal and a Reader/Writer, P2P equipped terminal.

- To use Android Beam, set to allow data transfer beforehand.
- When "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai" is activated, Android Beam cannot be used.
- Android Beam cannot be used on some applications. Available data varies by applications.
- Data transfer is not guaranteed for all Reader/Writer, P2P equipped terminals.

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...]→[NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings]

- If [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai] is marked, unmark the checkbox.

**2** Mark [Reader/Writer, P2P]

**3** Mark [Android Beam]

Android Beam becomes available.

### ◆ Transferring content on the screen

You can transfer content shown on the screen such as websites and maps, only by holding  mark over each other's terminal.

**1** Activate each other's Android Beam function

**2** Show website, map, etc. to transfer on the sender's terminal

**3** Hold  mark over each other's terminal

- When the terminal detects a compatible device, notification sounds. The screen content on the sender's terminal is zoomed out and "Touch to beam" appears.
- When "License Agreement" screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

**4** Tap the screen content to transfer

The content shown on the sender's terminal is transferred and appears on the receiver's screen.

# External device connection

## Connecting with a PC

### ◆ Operating data on the terminal from a PC

When the terminal and a PC are connected by PC connection USB cable T01 (optional) or Micro USB Cable 01 (optional), data stored on the microSD card and in the internal storage of the terminal can be operated from the PC.

- Supported PC operating systems (OS) are Microsoft Windows XP (Service Pack 3 or later), Microsoft Windows Vista, Microsoft Windows 7 and Microsoft Windows 8. However, operations for all PCs are not guaranteed.

### 1 Insert the microUSB plug of the USB cable into the external connection jack on the terminal and insert the USB plug of the USB cable into a USB connector on a PC

- When a microSD card is not mounted, from the Home screen  → Tap [Settings] → [Storage] → [Mount SD card].
- When connecting for the first time, go to Step 2. When connecting for the second time or later, go to Step 3.

### 2 Open the Notification panel → [Connected as a media device] → [Media device (MTP)]/[Camera (PTP)]

- For Windows XP, select [Media device (MTP)]. If you select [Camera (PTP)], data on the microSD card in the terminal may not be displayed correctly.

### 3 Select a program → Follow the onscreen instructions

### 4 Perform target operations

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- When [Camera (PTP)] is selected, data on the internal storage in the terminal can be operated from the PC only when microSD card is removed.

## Connecting with a Wi-Fi printer

You can connect the terminal with a Seiko Epson Wi-Fi printer via Wi-Fi to print images displayed on a browser screen, Gallery, etc. wirelessly.

- For Wi-Fi printers, refer to the EPSON website (<http://www.epson.jp/products/colorio/printer/>) (in Japanese only).
- For details how to operate a Seiko Epson Wi-Fi printer, refer to the printer's operation manual.
- Set Wi-Fi to ON in advance and connect the terminal to the same access point as a Wi-Fi printer. →P116
- Printable file formats are JPEG, BMP and PNG.

### ◆ Wireless printing

**1** On the browser screen,  → [Share page]/ [Share...] → [EPSON Printer]

**For Gallery :** On the still image screen,  → [EPSON Printer]

**2** Set required items → [Done]

- Set printer, paper size, etc. Setting items differ by the printer.

**3** [Print]

## Connecting with DLNA device

Still images, videos or music stored in the terminal can be played back on the DLNA compatible TV or PC. And the contents stored in the DLNA compatible PC or network-attached storage (NAS) can be played back on the terminal.

- Wi-Fi network is required to connect with the DLNA device. →P116
- For operations of the DLNA device, refer to the operation manual of the DLNA device.
- Connection with the terminal is not guaranteed for all DLNA devices.
- The terminal supports DTCP-IP. Link is not guaranteed for all DTCP-IP devices.

### ◆ Setting DiXiM Server

Make settings for sharing contents saved in the terminal on your home network.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [DiXiM Player]

- When the Wi-Fi setting confirmation screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

**2**  → [DiXiM Serverの設定 (DiXiM Server settings)]

- When [DiXiM Server] confirmation screen appears, tap [はい (Yes)].

### 3 Set required items

**DiXiM Server** : Mark to turn the server function on.

**サーバー名 (Server name)** : Change the name displayed on the DLNA device.

**アクセス権の設定 (Set access right)** : Mark [アクセス権の初期設定 (Set up access right)] to permit DLNA devices to access the terminal. Unmark it to permit only DLNA devices that are marked in [接続機器の一覧 (Device list)] to access.

**保存先設定 (Saving location setting)** : Set the saving location of contents uploaded from the DLNA device. You can save on a microSD card or the terminal memory.

**公開フォルダ設定 (Visible folder setting)** : Set a folder of content open to connected devices.

**Wi-Fi設定 (Wi-Fi setting)** : Set Wi-Fi network connection.

**非表示になったメッセージ (Hidden message)** : Set whether to show a message when activating.

**自動終了設定 (Automatic end setting)** : Set [自動終了しない (Not automatically end)] or time until DiXiM Server automatically ends.

**画面ロック中の動作 (Action in lock screen)** : Set whether to continue server operation even when screen unlock authentication is required.

### ◆ Playing back the terminal's contents on DLNA device

---

- Activate DiXiM Server to allow access from a DLNA device in advance.

#### 1 Operate through DLNA device

- Access the DiXiM server of the terminal to play back contents.

#### ✓INFORMATION

---

- Videos recorded with the terminal's camera may not be played with DLNA devices other than F-06E.

### ◆ Distributing contents in the terminal

---

Distribute contents on the terminal to DLNA devices. Playback can be operated via the terminal.

- Activate DiXiM Server to allow access from a DLNA device in advance. And, set the DLNA device to allow control from the terminal.

1 From the Home screen,  → [DiXiM Player]

2 Select the server name of the terminal in the server list

3  → [コンテンツタップ時の動作 (Action when content is tapped)] → [別の機器で再生 (Play on another device)]

**4** [再生先機器の選択方法 (Selection method for another player device)]→[その都度選ぶ (Select each time)]/[あらかじめ決めておく (Predetermined)]

- When you select [その都度選ぶ (Select each time)], go to Step 6.

**5** [既定の再生機器 (Default player device)]→  
Select a DLNA device to play

**6** →Select a playback type→Select a folder→  
Select a content

- When you select [その都度選ぶ (Select each time)] in Step 4, select from the remote player list.

**◆ Playing back DLNA device's contents on the terminal**

- Disclose contents on the DLNA device to allow access from the terminal in advance.

**1** From the Home screen, →[DiXiM Player]

**2** Select a server name of a DLNA device in the server list

**3** →[コンテンツタップ時の動作 (Action when content is tapped)]→[この端末で再生 (Play on the terminal)]

- You can select [別の機器で再生 (Play on other device)] in [コンテンツタップ時の動作 (Action when content is tapped)] and select a device to play in another DLNA device.

**4** →Select a playback type→Select a folder→  
Select a content

**5** Play back the content on the player screen

- While playing, tap  to enable [連続再生 (Continuous play)] so that you can play recorded content continuously in the list in order.
- If you change a playing device while playing a content as a player, the content is continued to play.

**✓INFORMATION** -----

- Touch and hold a content in the content selection screen→ Tap  to download content. However, copyrighted contents may not be downloaded on some DLNA devices.

**◆ Saving and playing digital recorded programs**

You can save digital recorded programs on DLNA devices such as a recorder to the terminal to play.

- The DLNA device is required to support uploading a content.
- Set to allow access from the DLNA device beforehand.

**1** From the Home screen, →[DiXiM Player]

**2** [サーバー起動 (Activate server)]→[はい (Yes)]

**3** Upload from the DLNA device

- The uploaded content is saved to the saving location that you set in [保存先設定 (Saving location setting)].→ P159

**4** →Select a content in the list of 持ち出し番組 (Programs to be moved out)

## Connecting with other devices

### ◆ Connecting with USB mass storage

You can exchange data between the terminal and a USB memory or an external hard disk drive connected with a USB cable for connecting peripheral device (commercially available).

- DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations for all USB devices.
- For further information on USB cables for your peripheral devices, refer to the operation manuals of USB devices to be connected.

#### 1 Connect the terminal with a USB mass storage device using a USB cable with connectors appropriate for respective devices.

- USB mass storage (only for one device when 2 or more devices are connected) is automatically mounted.

#### 2 Perform required operations

##### ✓INFORMATION

- For a USB mass storage with AC adapter, connect the AC adapter. Otherwise, the storage is not recognized.
- If the Browser, Camera, or TV (Full Seg/1Seg) is used at the same time as USB mass storage, warning notifying of function restriction may appear. In this case, stop the function being used before operating USB storage.

### ❖ Removing USB mass storage

- Do not disconnect the USB cable during data transfer. Doing so may damage or destroy the data.

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Storage]

#### 2 [Unmount USB storage] → Disconnect the USB cable

### ◆ Displaying on a TV via MHL connection

Connect the terminal to a TV with HDMI/MHL connectors to display videos or images on the TV.

- To connect the terminal to the TV with an HDMI jack, you need an HDMI standard certified HDMI cable (Category 2) compatible with HDMI plug (Type A) (commercially available) and HDMI conversion cable L01 (optional) or HDMI conversion cable SC01 (optional). Connection with an MHL-compatible-TV is available if using an MHL cable (commercially available).
- DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations for all HDMI devices.

#### 1 Connect an HDMI cable with an HDMI conversion cable

- For details on connection of HDMI conversion cable, refer to the HDMI conversion cable manual.

#### 2 Connect the HDMI cable to a TV HDMI port

- For HDMI connection, switching input, volume control, etc, refer to the operation manual of the TV.

### 3 Connect the HDMI conversion cable to the external connection jack of the terminal

- If the HDMI cable is unplugged while displaying on the TV, the terminal turns to connection stand-by mode for a certain period of time.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When connecting the TV that does not support HDCP, images or sounds are not output properly. Depending on content, external output may be prohibited from the content provider or may be suppressed due to a performance problem.
- When starting MHL output, the TV input mode may not switch and images may not be displayed depending on the TV connected. In that case, switch input mode using a TV remote control etc.
- The output data from the terminal may not fit the TV screen depending on the TV connected. In that case, change the TV display setting.
- While the HDMI cable is connected, do not hold the HDMI cable to lift the terminal.
- Remove the HDMI cable when not displaying on the TV.
- Radio wave conditions may be affected depending on your usage environment when using MHL connection.

### ◆ Displaying on Wi-Fi Miracast device via Wi-Fi connection

Show videos, images, etc on TV screen or displays by connecting the terminal to a Wi-Fi Miracast device through Wi-Fi connection.

- Set Wi-Fi in the terminal to ON in advance.

#### 1 From the Home screen, → [Settings] → [Miracast]

- When a Miracast device does not appear, tap [SEARCH FOR DISPLAYS].
- When the Miracast device connected last time is found, the terminal automatically connects with that device.

#### 2 Tap a detected Wi-Fi Miracast device

**Disconnecting Wi-Fi Miracast device : Tap a connected device → [OK]**

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When connecting a device that does not support HDCP, images or sounds are not output properly. Depending on content, external output may be prohibited from the content provider or may be suppressed due to a performance problem.
- When you receive a call during connection, incoming call screen also appears on the connected device.
- With some applications, content appears on the connected device, and operations such as playback can be performed from the terminal.

# International roaming

## Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)

With the international roaming (WORLD WING), you can use the terminal without changing phone number or mail address in the service area of the overseas network operator affiliated with DOCOMO. You can use Phone and SMS without changing settings.

- The terminal is Class 4. The terminal works in a 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service area. Also, it works in countries or districts where 3G 850 MHz/GSM 850 MHz is applied. Check the service area. Use 3G network or GSM/GPRS network overseas because Xi is not available overseas.
- Refer to the following documents before using the terminal overseas.
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
  - DOCOMO International Services website

### ✓INFORMATION

- For Country codes, International call access codes, Universal number international prefix, available countries/regions, and network operators, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

## Available service overseas

Main communication services	3G	3G850	GSM (GPRS)
Phone	○	○	○
SMS	○	○	○
Mail*	○	○	○
Browser*	○	○	○

\* To use data communication during roaming, set Data roaming setting to on. →P167

### ✓INFORMATION

- Some services may not be available depending on the network operator or network overseas.

## Before using the terminal overseas

### ◆ Before leaving Japan

To use the terminal overseas, check the following in Japan.

#### ■ Subscription

Check if you subscribe to WORLD WING. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

## ■ Charging

Use the AC Adapter 03 (optional), AC Adapter 04 (optional), AC Adapter F05 (optional) or AC Adapter F06 (optional) when you charge the battery overseas.

## ■ Usage charge

Overseas usage charges (call and packet communication) differ from those in Japan.

- Since some applications automatically perform communications, packet communication charges may become high. For operation of applications, contact the application providers.

## ◆ Advance preparation

---

### ■ Setting network service

If you subscribe to network services, you can use network services such as Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, Caller ID request service, etc., even overseas. Some network services are not available.

- To use network services overseas, you need to set Remote access to activate. You can set Remote access in the country you visit.
- Even if the setting/canceling operation is available, some network services cannot be used depending on overseas network operators.

## ◆ After arriving overseas

---

When you arrive overseas and turn the terminal ON, a connection to the available network is established automatically.

## ■ Connectivity

When you have set [Network operators] in [Mobile networks] to [Choose automatically], optimum network is automatically selected.

When you use a network operator of a country/region covered by the flat-rate service, you can use the service with flat-rate packet communication charges overseas up to the specified upper limit per day. To use this service, subscription of packet flat-rate service in Japan is required. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

## ■ Display

- During international roaming,  appears on the status bar. The terminal works in a 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service area. Also, it works in countries or districts where 3G 850 MHz/GSM 850 MHz is applied.
- You can confirm the name of the connected network operator on the Notification panel.

## ■ Date & time

When [Automatic date & time]/[Automatic time zone] in [Date & time] is marked, the date, time and time differences of the terminal are corrected by receiving information related to time and time differences from the network of overseas telecommunications carrier you connect to.

- Correction of the time or time differences may not be performed correctly depending on the network of overseas network operator. In that case, set time zone manually.
- Timing of correction varies by the overseas network operator.
- "Date & time" → P147

## ❖ About inquiries

- For loss or theft of the terminal or docomo mini UIM card, immediately contact DOCOMO from the spot to take the necessary steps for suspending the use. For inquiries, see the last page of this manual. Note that you are still liable for the call and communication charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.
- For using from land-line phone, entering "International call access code" or "Universal number international prefix" for the country is needed.

## Settings for overseas use

By default, the terminal is set to automatically search and switch to an available network. To switch network manually, perform the following operations.

- If you release SIM lock and use SIM by a carrier other than NTT DOCOMO to perform data communication, set an access point (APN) before use.→P114

## ◆ Setting Network Mode

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...]→[Mobile networks]

**2** [Network Mode]

**3** [LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)]/[LTE/3G]/[GSM]

## ✓INFORMATION

- If the mode is set to [LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)] and a GSM/GPRS network and 3G network of the same network operator are detected at the same time, connection to a 3G network is given priority.
- If the mode was set to [GSM] in the country you visited, set the mode to [LTE/3G] or [LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)] after returning to Japan.

## ◆ Setting a network operator manually

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...]→[Mobile networks]→[Network operators]

Available networks are searched for and displayed.

- If an error occurs in network search, unmark [Data enabled] and retry.→P122

**2** Select a network of the network operator

## ✓INFORMATION

- If the network operator was set manually in the country you visited, set [Network operators] to [Choose automatically] after returning to Japan.

## ◆ Setting Data roaming

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → In WIRELESS & NETWORKS, [More...] → [Mobile networks]
- 2 [Data roaming] → Check the contents on the Attention screen, [OK]

## Making/Receiving a call in the country you stay

### ◆ Making a call to outside country you stay (including Japan)

You can make a call from the country you stay to another country using the international roaming service.

- For details on available countries, network operators, etc., refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Phone]
- 2 [Dial] → + (Touch and hold "0") → Enter "Country code-Area code (City code) without leading 0 and phone number"
  - In some countries and areas such as Italy, "0" is required.
  - To call an overseas WORLD WING user, enter "81" (Japan) for the country code regardless of whether the party is in or out of the country you stay.

- 3 
  - If [Automatic conversion function] for [International dial assist] is marked and when you call someone in Japan, enter a phone number from City code →  → Tap [Converted number].

### ◆ Making a call inside the country you stay

You can make a call to the other party's land-line phone or mobile phone in the same way you do in Japan.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → [Phone]
- 2 [Dial] → Enter a phone number
  - Start with the area code (city code).
  - If you make a call to the party using "WORLD WING", make a call as an international call to Japan (by entering the country code "81" (Japan)) even when making a call in the country you stay.

- 3 

### ◆ Receiving a call in the country you stay

You can receive a call in the same way as you do in Japan.

### ✓INFORMATION

- An incoming call during the international roaming is forwarded internationally from Japan regardless of which country the call is from. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and the receiver is charged for a reception fee.

## ❖ Making a call to your terminal

### ■ To have the other party in Japan call you overseas

Have your phone number dialed as a domestic call in Japan.

### ■ To have the other party make a call from the outside Japan to the terminal in the country you stay

You have to receive a call through Japan no matter where you are; therefore, the other party needs to enter the international call access code and "81" (Country code of Japan).

**International call access code of the country of the caller -81-90 (or 80) - XXXX - XXXX**

## Setting international roaming

Make settings for international roaming or international call.

### ◆ Settings for making/receiving calls overseas

You can restrict incoming calls overseas, set notifications for incoming calls or set roaming guidance.

- For some overseas network operators, settings may not be made.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Phone] →  → [Call settings] → [Roaming settings]

## 2 Perform required operations

**Restricting incoming calls :** [Restricting incoming calls] → [Activate restricting]/[Deactivate restricting]/[Confirm settings]

- When [Activate restricting] is selected, tap [Restricting all incoming call] → [OK] to enter network security code.
- When [Deactivate restricting] is selected, tap [OK] to enter network security code.

**Incoming notification while roaming :** [Incoming notification while roaming] → [Activate notification]/[Deactivate notification]/[Confirm notification settings]

- Incoming calls received when the power is off or while you are out of the service area are notified by SMS when the power turns on or you are back in the service area (free).
- When you select [Activate notification] or [Deactivate notification], tap [OK].

**Setting roaming guidance :** [Roaming guidance] → [Activate service]/[Deactivate service]/[Confirm settings]

- When you selected [Activate service] or [Deactivate service], tap [OK].

**Setting the international dial assistance :** [International dial assist] → Set required items

- Mark [Automatic conversion function] to enable the automatic conversion.
- If [Country code] is selected, registering or adding country codes for making international calls are available.
- If [International prefix] is set, registering or adding prefix international call access code for making international calls are available.

## ◆ Network service (overseas)

Set network service such as voice mail from overseas.

- Setting the remote operation to be active in advance is required.
- If you make the settings overseas, you are charged a call fee to Japan from the country you stay.
- For some overseas network operators, settings may not be made.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Phone] →  → [Call settings] → [Roaming settings] → [Network service]

## **2** Select a service

**Remote operation(charged)** : Tap [OK] to operate following the voice prompt.

**Caller ID notification request service(charged)** : Tap [OK] to operate following the voice prompt.

**Roaming call notification(charged)** : Tap [OK] to operate following the voice prompt.

**Roaming guidance(charged)** : Tap [OK] to operate following the voice prompt.

**Voice mail(charged)** : Select an item and tap [OK] to operate following the voice prompt.

**Call forwarding(charged)** : Select an item and tap [OK] to operate following the voice prompt.

## After returning to Japan

**When you return to Japan, the terminal is connected to DOCOMO network automatically. If connection is failed, perform the following operations.**

- Set [Network Mode] in [Mobile networks] to [LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)]. →P166
- Set [Network operators] in [Mobile networks] to [Choose automatically]. →P166

# Appendix/Index

## Options and related devices

Combining the terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area.

For details, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Desktop Holder F40
- FOMA charging microUSB adapter T01
- PC connection USB cable T01
- AC Adapter F05<sup>\*1</sup>/F06<sup>\*1</sup>
- AC Adapter 03<sup>\*1</sup>/04<sup>\*1</sup>
- DC Adapter 03
- Wireless Earphone Set 02/03
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 02
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01
- Carry Case 02
- Pocket charger 01/02
- L-03E<sup>\*2</sup>
- Bluetooth Headset F01
- AC adapter for Bluetooth Headset F01
- AC Adapter Converter Plug TypeC 01<sup>\*3</sup>
- Micro USB Cable 01
- HDMI conversion cable SC01
- HDMI conversion cable L01
- Earphone adapter cable with antenna SH01
- DriveNetCradle 01

- \*1 When using the terminal overseas, use the adapter plug that is suitable for use in your travel destination. Also, do not charge the battery with a transformer for overseas travel.
- \*2 Only supported as a charger to charge the terminal battery.
- \*3 Use in combination with AC Adapter 03.

## Troubleshooting (FAQ)

### ◆ Troubleshooting

- Check for the necessity of software update first, and update the software if necessary. →P180
- When checking the following items does not improve symptoms, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.

### ■ Power supply and charging

#### ● The terminal cannot be turned ON.

Is the battery exhausted?

#### ● The screen freezes and the terminal cannot be turned off.

If the screen does not respond or the power cannot be turned off, press and hold  for 10 seconds or more to shut down the power forcibly.

- \* Note that data and settings may be erased since that is an operation for shutting down the power forcibly.

### ● The terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the adapter's power plug or cigarette lighter plug inserted to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket correctly?
- In case of using an optional AC Adapter 04, is the microUSB plug of AC adapter connected to the terminal correctly? In case of using the included desktop holder, is the microUSB plug connected to the Desktop Holder correctly?→P29, 30
- Is the charging terminal of the terminal dirty when you use included Desktop Holder? If it is dirty, clean it with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- Is a PC turned on when you use the PC connection USB cable T01 (optional)?
- If you call, perform communication or operate functions for a long time while charging the battery, temperature of the terminal may be raised and the indicator LED (red) may turn off. In high temperature status, the terminal stops charging for safety. Wait a while until the temperature is lowered and retry to charge.

### ■ Operations/Display

#### ● No operations are performed even by pressing keys.

Is the terminal in sleep mode? Press  or the fingerprint sensor to unlock.→P44

### ● The operation time provided by the battery is short.

- Running multiple applications increases battery consumption and usage time may become short. Exit from applications which you are not using as follows.
    - Exiting running application→P46
    - Exiting applications with 
  - Use "NX! eco" to make settings for reducing battery consumption.→P130
  - For reducing battery consumption, refer to ARROWS@ (<http://atfe.fmworld.net/at/>) (in Japanese only).
  - Is the terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area? Out of service area, a lot of power is consumed to search available radio waves.
  - The operation time provided by the internal battery varies by the operating environment and battery deterioration.
  - The internal battery is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces. When the operation time is too short with the battery fully charged, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- #### ● The docomo mini UIM card is not recognized.
- Is the docomo mini UIM card installed in the right direction?→P26
- #### ● The screen reacts slowly when a touch panel is tapped/ key is pressed.
- When large amount of data is saved in the terminal or transferring large-size data between the terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed.

● **The terminal, etc. become hot while operating/charging.**

While operating or charging, or if you call or watch TV, etc. for a long time while charging the battery, the terminal, internal battery and adapter may become hot. There is no problem and you can continue to use them.

● **The terminal becomes hot while operating/charging.**

If high temperature of the terminal continues, charging or some functions may be disabled.

● **The terminal becomes hot and the power turns OFF.**

If you activate several applications, use camera, connect to the Internet for a long time while charging the battery, etc., temperature of the terminal may be raised. When the terminal is in high temperature state for a long time, charging or functions may stop or screen brightness may be adjusted. And the power of the terminal may shut down to prevent you from burns.

● **The display is dim.**

- Have you changed any of the following settings?
  - Brightness→P125
  - NX! eco→P130
  - Privacy view→P126

● **Display flickers.**

If [Automatic brightness] of the screen brightness is marked, display backlight automatically changes according to the ambient brightness. The screen may seem to be flickering then. →P125

● **The display has afterimages.**

If the same screen is displayed for a while, afterimages of that screen may remain even after the screen is changed for a certain operation.

● **The clock is not on time.**

The clock time may be wrong when the terminal stays powered on for a long time. Make sure that [Automatic date & time] of Date & time is marked and then turn OFF and ON the terminal in a place with good signal conditions. →P147

● **Terminal operation is unstable.**

- Instability may be caused by application that you installed after purchasing the terminal. If the symptom is improved when you boot the terminal in safe mode (function for booting in near default state), uninstalling the installed application may improve the symptom. Boot the terminal in safe mode by one of the following procedure.
  - With the power turned on, keep pressing  →When phone option menu appears, touch and hold [Restart] →When confirmation screen for "Reboot to safe mode" appears, tap [OK]
  - With the power turned off, press and hold  for 2 seconds or more. After the docomo logo disappears and Xi logo appears, keep pressing When safe mode is booted, [Safe mode] is displayed at the lower left of the screen. To exit the safe mode, turn power OFF and then ON.
- \* Back up the necessary data before using safe mode.
- \* Some widgets that you created may be removed.
- \* Safe mode is not a normal booting state. To use ordinarily, exit the safe mode.

- **Operations are not possible when tapping the screen.**
  - Do you operate with a gloved hand?
  - Do you operate with a fingernail or foreign object on the screen?
  - Do you put a protective sheet or sticker on the display? Depending on the protective sheet, you cannot operate the terminal correctly.
  - Do you operate with the touch panel wet or with your finger wet with sweat or water?
  - Do you operate under water?
  - Touch the screen with your finger directly to operate the terminal.
- **Operations are slower/Application operation is unstable/Some applications are not activated.**

Operation becomes unstable if the terminal is low on memory. When a message indicating the memory space is short is displayed, delete unnecessary applications. → P131
- **Applications cannot be operated properly (applications cannot be activated, or errors occur frequently).**

Are there any applications being disabled? Enable disabled applications, then retry to operate. → P131
- **Data is not displayed normally/Normal touch panel operations are not possible.**

Turn the terminal OFF and ON. → P31

## ■ Phone/Voice call

- **Cannot dial by tapping **

Do you set Airplane mode? → P119
- **During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud.**

Change the listening volume. Turn Voice clear, Voice slowing and Voice adjust ON to make the other party's voice easy to understand. → P55
- **Calls are not connected (Even when moving, 圏外 (out of service area) does not disappear or although radio waves are enough, making/receiving calls is unavailable).**
  - Turn the power OFF and ON, or reattach the docomo mini UIM card. → P26, 31
  - Due to the nature of radio waves, making/receiving calls may be unavailable even when 4 signal status icons appear on the display. Move to call again.
  - Do you set call restriction such as Reject unregistered call or Decline call? → P57
  - Have you changed network type (LTE/3G/GSM)? → P166
  - Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/emails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. In this case, [Please wait for a while] appears and the caller hears a busy tone. Move to other place or call again at other time.

● **The ringtone does not sound.**

- Check the ringtone volume. →P122
- Have you activated any of the following functions?
  - Public mode (Drive mode) →P57
  - Airplane mode →P119
  - Manner mode →P123
- Do you set call restriction such as Reject unregistered call or Decline call? →P57
- Is the Answer time of Phone memo, ring time for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service set to "0 Sec."? →P57

● **Calls cannot be made.**

- Is the docomo mini UIM card installed in the right direction? →P26
- Do you enter a phone number from City code?
- Do you set Airplane mode? →P119

■ **Mail**

● **Mail is not received automatically.**

Check if you set Inbox check frequency in Email account settings to "Never". →P67

● **The notification icon indicating new mail does not appear.**

- Have you changed any of the following settings?
  - [Notifications] in Settings for Messaging →P64
  - [Email notifications] in Settings for Email →P67

■ **TV/Camera**

● **Cannot watch TV.**

- Are you out of digital terrestrial broadcasting service area or in an area with poor signal strength?
- Do you set channels? →P91

● **Photos and videos taken with the camera are blurred.**

- Check if clouds or dirt attach to the lens of camera.
- You can also focus using the touch focus function. →P96, 98

■ **Osaifu-Keitai**

● **Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.**

- When Omakase Lock is activated,  or  appears on the status bar and Osaifu-Keitai functions are unavailable regardless of the NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock settings.
- Is NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock activated? →P78
- Do you place  mark of the terminal over IC card reader? →P78

■ **Overseas use**

● **Cannot use the terminal overseas even when signal status icon is displayed.**

Do you subscribe to WORLD WING? Check if you subscribe to WORLD WING.

- **圏外 (Out of service) is displayed, and you cannot use the terminal overseas.**
  - Are you out of the international roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength? Check if the service area and network operator are available, referring to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
  - Change network mode type to [LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)]. → P166
  - Set the network operator to [Choose automatically]. → P166
  - It may be recovered by turning the terminal OFF and ON.
- **Cannot use the terminal suddenly while using overseas.**

Does usage amount exceed the limit of maximum charges for use? For use of International roaming (WORLD WING), the limit of maximum charges for use is set in advance. When it exceeds the limit of maximum charges for use, pay the charges.
- **There is no incoming call overseas.**

Is Restricting incoming calls set to [Activate restricting]? → P168
- **No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/Functions for using contents saved in the phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.**

Even when a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on the terminal unless notified from the network or network operator used. And, a notified caller ID may be different from that of the caller by some networks or network operators you use.
- **Cannot perform data communication overseas.**

Check the data roaming settings. → P167

## ■ Data management

- **Data saved in microSD card is not displayed.**

Reattach the microSD card. → P150
- **Data transfer between the terminal and USB mass storage is not performed.**

Do you use USB HUB? If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

## ■ Bluetooth

- **The terminal cannot be connected to a Bluetooth device/ A Bluetooth communication device cannot be found from the terminal.**

Make Bluetooth device registering stand-by state and then register the device on the terminal. If you delete already registered device and register the device again as a new device, delete the registrations on both the terminal and Bluetooth device, and then perform registration of the devices.
- **Calls cannot be made from the terminal connected to an external device such as car navigation or handsfree device.**

If calls are made several times when the other party does not answer or is out of service, the call to this number may be disabled. In this case, turn the terminal OFF and ON.

## ■ Maps/GPS function

### ● **Cannot set AUTO-GPS service information.**

- Is AUTO-GPS function disabled due to battery low? If AUTO-GPS is disabled by Lower-power operation settings, AUTO-GPS service information cannot be set. In this case, set Lower-power operation settings to [Not suspend] or charge the battery. →P131
- Is AUTO-GPS operation setting set to OFF? →P131
- Is GPS function OFF? When GPS function is OFF, AUTO-GPS function stops. →P131

## ■ Others

### ● **When performing fingerprint authentication or registering fingerprints, [Swipe was too short] or [Swipe was too slow], etc. appears without touching the fingerprint sensor.**

Possible cause is that the surface of the fingerprint sensor is wet or condensed of moisture. Wipe water off with a soft cloth before use.

### ● **Screen display turns off when using the fingerprint sensor.**

The terminal goes into sleep mode by pressing the fingerprint sensor. Slide your finger over the fingerprint sensor not pressing the sensor.

### ● **Fingerprint authentication is unavailable when connecting terminal with a PC, etc.**

When connecting the terminal using a USB cable to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC, make sure that the device is grounded in advance. If the connected device is not grounded, fingerprint authentication may be unavailable. In such a case, disconnect the terminal from the device and retry fingerprint authentication.

### ● **Data saved in the USB mass storage are not displayed.**

Remove and then attach the USB mass storage again.

### ● **Cannot recognize a commercially available external device (USB mouse, keyboard, etc.).**

If you use a commercially available conversion adapter for microUSB, connect the conversion adapter for microUSB and an external device, and then connect to the terminal.

## ◆ **Error messages**

---

### ● **Memory space is full**

**The terminal is low on memory. If you keep using, some functions and applications may not be operated.**

**Open setting screen to select unnecessary apps, then press "Uninstall" to uninstall them.**

Displayed when available memory of the terminal is low. Tap [Setting screen] to delete unnecessary applications. Alternatively, end running applications or clear cache of applications to increase memory space. →P46,130

### ● **Please wait for a while (Voice service) / Please wait for a while (Data service)**

Phone line or packet communication facilities are broken down or line or packet communication network is very busy. Wait a while and then operate again.

### ● **Cannot activate the fingerprint sensor.**

It appears when the fingerprint sensor does not work properly. If the fingerprint sensor is disabled, please contact a docomo Shop near you.

### ● **The PIN unlocking code has been locked**

This message appears when PUK code is entered with docomo mini UIM card is PUK locked. Contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. →P133

● **No SIM card.**

Check if the docomo mini UIM card is inserted to the terminal correctly. →P26

● **SIM card is locked.**

Displayed when you turn on the terminal with PIN code enabled. Enter the correct PIN code. →P133

● **SIM card error**

**SIM card removed. Phone will restart.**

It may appear when metal part of docomo mini UIM card is dirty or when docomo mini UIM card is removed with the power ON, but it is not malfunction. Clean the metal part of docomo mini UIM card regularly. Do not remove docomo mini UIM card with the power ON. The terminal may not operate normally.

## Smartphone Anshin Remote Support

**By sharing screens of your terminal with DOCOMO, you can receive technical support to make settings. (In Japanese only)**

- This service is not available when your docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, during international roaming, or in Airplane mode.
- Smartphone Anshin Remote Support is a charged service requiring subscription.
- Some operations and settings are not supported.
- For details of Smartphone Anshin Remote Support, refer to NTT DOCOMO's website.

**1 Call スマートフォン遠隔サポートセンター (Smartphone Remote Support center)**

 **0120-783-360**

**Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round)**

**2 From the Home screen,  → [遠隔サポート (Remote support)]**

- For the first using, agree to "ソフトウェア使用許諾書 (License Agreement)".

**3 Enter connection number notified by DOCOMO**

**4 Remote support starts when you are connected**

## Resetting the terminal

Reset the terminal to the default state. All installed applications and saved data to the terminal, for the most part, however, are deleted.

- To erase SD card data, see "Erasing data in microSD card (Format)".→P129

**1** From the Home screen, →[Settings]→In PERSONAL, [More...]→[Backup & reset]

**2** [Factory data reset]→[Reset phone]

- When Security unlock preference is set, authentication is required.

**3** [Erase everything]

A short while after the reset is completed, the terminal will be restarted.

- Do not turn off the terminal while resetting phone.

### ✓INFORMATION

- If the terminal is reset while Privacy mode is set, data saved in the microSD card to which Privacy mode is set cannot be accessed. Make sure to disable Privacy mode with the microSD card attached before resetting.→P141
- When the touch panel is not working properly, etc. after resetting, turn the terminal OFF and ON.

## Warranty and After-Sales Service

### ❖Warranty

- The terminal is provided with a written warranty. Make sure that you receive it. Check the written contents and items such as "販売店名・お買い上げ日 (Shop name/date of purchase)" and keep it in a safe place. If it does not contain the necessary information, immediately contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Since troubles, repair or other handling of the terminal may cause contents in the phonebook etc. to be altered or deleted. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the Phonebook data etc., in case.
  - \* Data such as phonebook entries in the terminal can be saved in a microSD card.
  - \* Data such as phonebook entries can be backed up to Data center using Data Security Service (subscription is required).

## ❖ After Sales Services

---

### ■ When problems occur

Before requesting repair, read the section on "Troubleshooting" in this manual (→P170). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only).

### ■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take the terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office. Be sure to check the opening hours of the office before you go. The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. Note that, repair may take longer time depending on the state of damage.

### ■ In the warranty period

- The terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. Repair requests that are not accompanied by the warranty or that involve malfunction and damage due to incorrect handling by the owner (damage of liquid crystal, connector, etc.) will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.

### ■ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases.

- When corrosion due to moisture, condensation, perspiration, etc. is detected, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed (repairs may not be possible if external connection jack, stereo earphone jack, or liquid crystal is damaged, or the terminal outer case is lifted).
- \* Even in case that a repair is possible, since those conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair is charged.

### ■ After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

### ■ Replacement parts

Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 4 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts, etc. Note that repair may still be possible depending on the defective portion even if the stock period has expired. Contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual. (In Japanese only)

### ■ Notes

- Do not modify the terminal or its accessories.
  - May cause fire, injuries or malfunction.
  - The modified terminal may be repaired only if the owner agrees on that all the modified parts are restored to the original conditions. However, repairs may be refused depending on the modifications.
- The following cases may be regarded as modifications.
  - A sticker etc. is put on the display or keypad part
  - The terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
  - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO's genuine parts

- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Function settings and information may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of the terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.
- If repair is executed, MAC address for Wi-Fi and Bluetooth address may be changed regardless of malfunction part.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece, speaker, etc. of the terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- This terminal is waterproof. However, if inside of the terminal gets wet or moist, turn the power off immediately, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. Note that repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the terminal.

### Precautions on memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded data

Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the terminal. DOCOMO shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DOCOMO may replace your terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it. In that case, we cannot transfer these data to replaced products except for some data.

## Software update

**This function allows you to connect the network and check if software in the F-06E needs to be updated, if software update is necessary, it downloads software to update. Check the NTT DOCOMO website to see if software updates are necessary.**

- Software may be updated in following 3 methods :
  - Automatic Update : Automatically download file to update at the specified time.
  - Now update : Update software immediately.
  - Reserved update : Automatically update software at the time set in advance.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Software update can be done even when various data, such as phonebook entries registered in terminal, camera images, mail, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DOCOMO recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.

## ◆ Using software update

---

- Software update should be done with battery fully charged. It is recommended to perform while charging.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases.
  - During a call
  - When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed\*
  - During international roaming\*
  - When Airplane mode is on\*
  - While upgrading Android software
  - When date and time are not set correctly
  - When the remaining battery is not sufficient for software update
  - When the remaining memory is not sufficient for software update
- \* Even in Wi-Fi connection, update cannot be performed.
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- Making/receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update. Only incoming calls can be answered while downloading.
- Stay in a place with strong radio wave condition when updating software. Software update may be canceled if the radio wave condition is not good enough.
- If software update is not needed, [No update is needed.] appears.
- During international roaming or when the terminal is out of service area, [When docomo network is not available, or during roaming software update is not available even if Wi-Fi is connected.] or [When docomo network is not available, or during roaming, install cannot be started even if Wi-Fi is connected.] appears. The same messages appear even while connecting via Wi-Fi.
- SMS sent during software update is stored in the SMS center.

- When updating software, your private information concerning F-06E (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server for software update managed by DOCOMO. DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update has failed, the terminal may not activate or [Update failed] appears and all operations may become unavailable. In that case, please bring the terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- When PIN code is set, the PIN code entry screen appears during resetting after rewriting and you need to enter PIN code.
- While updating software, do not activate other applications.

## ◆ Updating software automatically

---

Update file is automatically downloaded and software is updated at the specified time.

### ❖ Automatic update setting

---

- The settings of Software Update is set to [Automatic Update] by default.

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [About phone] → [Software Update]

**2** [Configure the software update] → [Automatic Update]/[Manual Update]

## ❖ When software update is necessary

If the update file is downloaded automatically, (software update available) appears on the status bar.

- When the rewrite start time is reached with (software update available) displayed, software is automatically rewritten and (software update available) disappears.

### 1 Open the Notification panel and tap the notification

Software update notice screen appears.



Rewrite notice screen

### 2 Perform target operations

**Closing confirmation :** [OK]

Return to the Home screen. Updating starts when the preset time is reached.

**Changing preset time :** [Set Time]

For reserved update → P183 "Reserving software update"

**Rewriting immediately :** [Start update]

For updating immediately → P182 "Updating software immediately"

## ✓ INFORMATION

- If the software is not updated when the update notification is received, (software update available) appears on the status bar.
- If software update at the preset time could not be performed, the software update will be performed at the same time the following day.
- Software cannot be updated automatically when the Auto-update setting is set to [Manual Update] or while updating software by Now update.

## ◆ Updating software immediately

Software update starts immediately.

- There are 2 ways to activate software update: activating from Software update notice screen and activating from the menu.

<Example> Activating software update from the setting menu

1 From the Home screen, [Settings] → [About phone] → [Software Update]

2 [Start the software update] → [Yes]

- If software update is not needed, [No update is needed] is displayed.



Activating from Software update notice screen : Display Software update notice screen → [Start the software update]

### 3 Rewriting starts automatically approximately 10 seconds after [Ready for update. Please refrain from starting other application.] is displayed

- Rewriting starts when you tap [OK].
- While updating the software, all key operations become disabled and updating cannot be canceled.
- When the software update is complete, the terminal restarts automatically and the Home screen is displayed.



### ❖ Post-update display

When software update is complete, it is notified by  on the status bar. Open the Notification panel and tap the notification to display the update completion screen.

### ❖ Reserving software update

You can preset time to update the software if you want to specify another time for installing the update file.

1 Display preset time → [Set Time]

2 Set time → [Set]

### ❖ When the reserved time is reached

When the preset time is reached, rewriting starts automatically approximately 10 seconds after [Ready for update. Please refrain from starting other application.] is displayed.

#### ❖ INFORMATION

- While updating the software, all key operations become disabled and updating cannot be canceled.
- If software update could not be started at the preset time, the software update will be performed at the same time the following day.
- Software is not updated at the reserved time while Android software is being upgraded.
- When an alarm, etc. is set at the same time as the reserved time, priority will be given to the software update.
- If F-06E is turned OFF at the reserved time, the software update starts at the same time as the reserved time after the terminal is turned ON.
- If  (Software update was suspended Please check the remaining internal storage capacity and retry.) appears on the status bar during software update, make sure that sufficient memory remains on the phone memory and retry to update.
- If  (Software update was suspended Please check the status of the handset and retry.) appears on the status bar during software update, make sure that the terminal is not in the following states and retry to update.
  - Out of service area
  - Interfered by some function

## Upgrade Android software

This function allows you to connect the network, check if Android software in the terminal needs to be upgraded, and download update file to upgrade if necessary.

Check  (Upgrade Android software) on the status bar or the NTT DOCOMO website to see if Upgrade Android software is necessary.

- The following updates are applied to the terminal by Upgrade Android software.
    - Improving and adding functions
    - Operability enhancement
    - Improving quality
    - Security patch update
- To use the terminal in safety and more comfortably, be sure to upgrade to the latest version.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Upgrade Android software can be done even when data saved to the terminal is remaining; note that data may not be always secured depending on the conditions of your terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). You are recommended to back up necessary data beforehand. However some data may not be backed up.

## ◆ Using Upgrade Android software

- When Upgrade Android software is performed, restoring the previous Android software is not possible
- Upgrade Android software when the terminal battery is fully charged.
- For Upgrade Android software, docomo mini UIM card is needed. For using packet communication, subscription to sp-mode is required.
- Exit from all applications before upgrading Android software. Activating applications while upgrading may interrupt Upgrade Android software.
- Do not turn off the terminal while upgrading.
- While performing Upgrade Android software, all functions of the terminal including making/receiving calls are unavailable.
- Upgrade Android software is unavailable in the following cases.
  - During a call
  - When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed
  - During international roaming
  - In Airplane mode
  - Tethering in use
  - When date and time are not set correctly
  - When the remaining battery is not sufficient
- Upgrade Android software may take time.
- During international roaming or when the terminal is out of service area, [Move to a strong signal area and retry upgrading.] appears.
- When Upgrade Android software is performed, some settings are initialized. Make the settings again.

- When upgrading Android software, the private information concerning the terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server of DOCOMO. DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except Upgrade Android software.
- When PIN code is set, the PIN code entry screen appears in the reboot step after rewriting and you need to enter PIN code.
- If Upgrade Android software failed and all operations become disabled, please contact the terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.

## ◆ Downloading update file

**1** From the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [About phone] → [Upgrade Android software]

### 2 [Start upgrading]

**Download now (only via Wi-Fi)** : Immediately download the update file via Wi-Fi connection.

**Download later (via Wi-Fi or Xi)** : Download the update file via Wi-Fi connection or packet communication at specified time.

**Download later (only via Wi-Fi)** : Download the update file via Wi-Fi at reserved time. It appears when downloading via packet communication is unavailable.

**Do not upgrade** : End Android version upgrade without upgrading version.

- When the latest software is applied to the terminal, [No upgrade is needed.] appears.
- If downloading stops on the way, already downloaded data is retained. To resume downloading, resume from  (Download stopped) on the status bar.

- When [Download later] is selected, time for download is automatically set. Changing start time is unavailable. If you do not want to download at the automatically set time, tap [Upgrade Android software] → [Cancel] and then tap [Download now (only via Wi-Fi)] to download the update file.

## ◆ Installing update file

When downloading the update file is complete, installing to the terminal is available.

**Install now** : Immediately install the update file.

**Install later** : Install the update file at reserved time.

When installing is complete, the terminal restarts.

- When [Install later] is tapped, time for installing is automatically set. To change the start time, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [About phone] → [Upgrade Android software] and then change start time.

## ◆ After Android version upgrade

After Android software is upgraded, update and check each application from the Home screen,  → [Play Store] →  → [My apps] etc. When there is an update for application, operations may become unstable or function may not work properly without updating the application.

- For Android software support information on each application, contact the application provider.

## Main specifications

### Phone

<b>Product name</b>		F-06E
<b>Size</b>		Approx. 139 mm (H)×70 mm (W)×9.9 mm (T) (Thickest part : Approx. 10.8 mm)
<b>Weight</b>		Approx. 163 g
<b>Memory</b>		ROM : 64 GB RAM : 2 GB
<b>Continuous stand-by time</b> <sup>*1,2</sup>	<b>FOMA/3G</b>	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 560 H
	<b>GSM</b>	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 460 H
	<b>LTE</b>	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 560 H
<b>Continuous call time</b> <sup>*2,3</sup>	<b>FOMA/3G</b>	Approx. 680 min.
	<b>GSM</b>	Approx. 720 min.
<b>1Seg watching time</b> <sup>*4</sup>		Approx. 360 min.
<b>Mobacas watching time</b> <sup>*5</sup>		Approx. 390 min.

<b>Charging time</b> <sup>*6</sup>		AC Adapter 03 : (alone) Approx. 270 min. (when Desktop Holder F40 used) Approx. 270 min. AC Adapter 04 : (alone) Approx. 180 min. (when Desktop Holder F40 used) Approx. 180 min. DC Adapter : Approx. 280 min.
<b>Display</b>	<b>Type</b>	TFT
	<b>Size</b>	Approx. 5.2 inches
	<b>Number of colors</b>	16,777,216 colors
	<b>Resolution</b>	1,080 (H) × 1,920 (V) dots (Full HD)
<b>Image pickup device</b>	<b>Type</b>	Out-camera : Back-illuminated CMOS In-camera : Back-illuminated CMOS
	<b>Size</b>	Out-camera : 1/2.8 inches In-camera : 1/8.2 inches
<b>Number of effective pixels</b>		Out-camera : Approx. 16.3 million pixels In-camera : Approx. 1.3 million pixels
<b>Number of recording pixels (Max.)</b>		Out-camera : Approx. 16 million pixels In-camera : Approx. 1.2 million pixels

<b>Digital zoom</b>	<b>Still image</b>	Out-camera : Up to approx. 14.4 x (32 levels)
	<b>Videos</b>	Out-camera : Up to approx. 4.0 x (32 levels)
<b>Wireless LAN</b>		IEEE802.11a/b/g/n/ac <sup>*7, 8</sup> compatible
<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Version</b>	4.0 <sup>*9</sup>
	<b>Output</b>	Power class 1
	<b>Supported Bluetooth profile<sup>*10</sup></b>	HFP, HSP, DUN, OPP, SPP, HID, A2DP/aptX, AVRCP, PBAP, HDP, ANP, FMP, PASP, PXP, TIP
<b>Earphone/microphone jack</b>		∅ 3.5 mm Audio jack, tetrapolar
<b>Display language</b>		Japanese/English
<b>Input language (Character entry)</b>		Japanese/English/Korean/Chinese

\*1 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated stand-by time when radio signal reception is normal. Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated average operation time when radio signal reception is normal.

Due to internal battery charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc. stand-by time may be reduced to about half.

\*2 Activating applications also reduces call (communication)/stand-by time even if you do not call or use the Internet.

\*3 Continuous call time indicates the estimated time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.

\*4 1Seg watching time indicates the estimated watching time when radio signal reception is normal.

\*5 Mobacas watching time indicates the estimated watching time when radio signal reception is normal.

\*6 Charging time indicates the estimated time for charging an empty internal battery with the terminal turned OFF. Charging with the terminal turned ON or charging in lower temperature requires longer time.

\*7 2.4 GHz/5 GHz are supported for IEEE 802.11n.

\*8 Compatible with IEEE802.11ac draft version. The terminal may not be able to communicate with official-version-compatible devices launched in future or draft-version-compatible devices from other companies. For compatible products, refer to the following website.

<http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/wifi/> (In Japanese only)

\*9 It is confirmed that the terminal and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with Bluetooth standards designated by Bluetooth SIG, and they are authenticated. However, procedures may differ or data transfer may not be possible depending on the device's characteristics or specifications.

\*10 These are created by standardizing connection procedures for Bluetooth communications according to individual product properties.

## ■ Internal battery

<b>Battery used</b>	Li-ion battery
<b>Nominal voltage</b>	3.8V
<b>Nominal capacity</b>	3,020mAh (12Wh)

## ❖ File format

Still images and videos taken by the terminal are saved in the following file formats :

Type	File format	Extension
Still images	JPEG	jpg
Videos	MP4	mp4

## ❖ Numbers of still images (Estimation)

Image size	Terminal	microSD card (1GB)
Mobile email (640×480)	Approx. 400,000	Approx. 8,000

## ❖ Time length of shooting videos (Estimation)

Image size	Terminal	microSD card (1GB)
Mobile email (640×480)	Approx. 1,054 min. (Approx. 87 min. per one)	Approx. 43 min. (Approx. 43 min. per one)

## ❖ Recording time of 1Seg (Estimation)

microSD card (1GB)	microSDXC card (64GB)
Approx. 320 min.	Approx. 20,480 min. (Approx. 360 min. per one)

\* Varies by memory space of microSD card or contents of program to be recorded (data broadcasting volume etc.).

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model F-06E mobile phone complies with Japanese technical regulations and international guidelines regarding exposure to radio waves.

This mobile phone was designed in observance of Japanese technical regulations regarding exposure to radio waves (\*1) and limits to exposure to radio waves recommended by a set of equivalent international guidelines. This set of international guidelines was set out by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is in collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO), and the permissible limits include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health condition.

The technical regulations and international guidelines set out limits for radio waves as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, which is the value of absorbed energy in any 10 grams of tissue over a 6-minute period. The SAR limit for mobile phones is 2.0 W/kg. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone when tested for use at the ear is 0.374 W/kg. There may be slight differences between the SAR levels for each product, but they all satisfy the limit.

The actual SAR of this mobile phone while operating can be well below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum required to reach the network. Therefore in general, the closer you are to a base station, the lower the power output of the device.

This mobile phone can be used in positions other than against your ear. This mobile phone satisfies the international guidelines when used with a carrying case or a wearable accessory approved by NTT DOCOMO, INC.\*2 In case you are not using the approved accessory, please use a product that does not contain any metals, and one that positions the mobile phone at least 1.5 cm away from your body.

The World Health Organization has stated that "a large number of studies have been performed over the last two decades to assess whether mobile phones pose a potential health risk. To date, no adverse health effects have been established as being caused by mobile phone use."

Please refer to the WHO website if you would like more detailed information.

[http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts\\_press/fact\\_english.htm](http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts_press/fact_english.htm)

Please refer to the websites listed below if you would like more detailed information regarding SAR.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications Website:

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses Website:

<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html> (in Japanese only)

NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website:

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/sar/>

FUJITSU LIMITED Website:

<http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/sar/> (in Japanese only)

\*1 Technical regulations are defined by the Ministerial Ordinance Related to Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Radio Equipment Regulations).

\*2 Regarding the method of measuring SAR when using mobile phones in positions other than against the ear, international standards (IEC62209-2) were set in March of 2010. On the other hand, technical regulation is currently being deliberated on by national council. (As of October, 2011)

## ◆ Declaration of Conformity

The product "F-06E" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on <http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/doc/> (in Japanese only).

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.

Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR\* limits\*\* for exposure to radio-frequency(RF) energy, which SAR\* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.307W/kg for HEAD. While there may be differences between the SAR\* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet\*\*\* the EU requirements for RF exposure.

\* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

\*\* The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/Kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

\*\*\* Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operation positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

### ◆ Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice

---

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
  - ① this device may not cause harmful interference, and
  - ② this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications made in or to the radio phone, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, will void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- The device complies with 15.205 of the FCC Rules.

### ◆ FCC RF Exposure Information

---

This model phone meets the U.S. Government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

This model phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. This model phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the FCC of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions as accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output level of the phone.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to prove to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC, when tested for use at the ear, is 0.72W/kg, and when worn on the body, is

0.98W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements).

While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirements.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Equipment Authorization Search section at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/> (please search on FCC ID VQK-F06E).

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines. Please use an accessory designated for this product or an accessory which contains no metal and which positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

\* In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the general public is 1.6 Watts/kg (W/kg), averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## ◆ Important Safety Information

---

### **AIRCRAFT**

Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers flight mode or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

### **DRIVING**

Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

### **HOSPITALS**

Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

### **PETROL STATIONS**

Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

## INTERFERENCE

Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

### Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15 cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pace maker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and does not carry it in a breast pocket.

### Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

### For other Medical Devices :

Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

### Warning

This device have been tested to comply with the Sound Pressure Level requirement laid down in the applicable EN 50332-1 and/or EN 50332-2 standards. Permanent hearing loss may occur if earphones or headphones are used at high volume for prolonged periods of time.

<Prevention of Hearing Loss>

Warning statement requirement under EN 60950-1:A12.



Warning: To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen to high volume levels for long periods.

## Export Administration Regulations

**This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). And, they are also under coverage of Export Administration Regulations of the U.S. When exporting and reexporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan or US Department of Commerce.**

## Intellectual Property Right

### ◆ Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.

Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Avoid taking pictures of others with the terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

## ◆ Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-motion", "Deco-mail", "ToruCa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "iD", "WORLD WING", "sp-mode", "Xi", logo of "Xi", logo of "sp-mode" and logo of "iD" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Rovi, G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and G-Guide related logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Rovi Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in Japan.
- This product contains NetFront Document Viewer of ACCESS CO., LTD. ACCESS, the ACCESS logo, and NetFront are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and/or other countries. Copyright© 2013 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- "ATOK" is a registered trademark of JustSystems Corporation in Japan and other countries. "ATOK" is a copyrighted work of JustSystems Corporation and other rights are those of JustSystems Corporation and respective owners.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.



ACCESS<sup>™</sup> NetFront<sup>™</sup>



- Copyright© 2013 DigiOn, Inc. All rights reserved. DigiOn and DiXiM are registered trademarks of DigiOn, Inc.



- StationTV<sup>®</sup> is trademark of PIXELA CORPORATION.
- TouchSense<sup>®</sup> Technology and MOTIV<sup>™</sup> Integrator Licensed from Immersion Corporation and protected under one or more of the following United States Patents:



- 5844392, 5959613, 6088017, 6104158, 6147674, 6275213, 6278439, 6300936, 6424333, 6424356, 6429846, 7091948, 7154470, 7168042, 7191191, 7209117, 7218310, 7369115, 7592999, 7623114, 7639232, 7656388, 7701438, 7765333, 7779166, 7821493, 7969288 and additional patents pending.
- Twitter and Twitter logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Twitter, Inc.
- microSDHC Logo and microSDXC logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.
- Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows Media<sup>®</sup>, Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> and PowerPoint<sup>®</sup> are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. In this manual, they may be described as Excel and Word.
- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
  - Windows 8 indicates the Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8 operating system and Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8 Pro operating system.
  - Windows 7 stands for Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 (Starter, Home Basic, Home Premium, Professional, Enterprise and Ultimate).

- Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
- Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- Google, Google logo, Android, Android logo, Google Play, Google Play logo, Gmail, Google Latitude, Google Latitude logo, YouTube, YouTube logo, Google Maps, Google Maps Navigation, Google Maps Navigation logo, Google Talk, Google Talk logo, Google Local, Google Local logo, Voice Search, Google+, Google+ logo, Picasa, Google Chrome, Google Chrome logo, Google Play Books are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google Inc.
- The Bluetooth® smart ready word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, INC. and any use of such marks by NTT DOCOMO, INC. is under license. Other trademarks and names are those of their respective owners.
- aptX is a trademark of CSR plc.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "UD新丸ゴ (UD Shin Maru Go)" is provided by Morisawa Inc. and the copyrights of its font data belong to them.
- Wi-Fi, logo of Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Alliance, WMM, Wi-Fi CERTIFIED, logo of Wi-Fi CERTIFIED, WPA, WPA2, Wi-Fi Protected Setup, Wi-Fi Direct, and Miracast are trademarks or registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- AOSS™ is a trademark of BUFFALO INC.



- DLNA®, the DLNA Logo and DLNA CERTIFIED™ are trademarks, service marks, or certification marks of the Digital Living Network Alliance. DLNA for this model is certified to FUJITSU LIMITED.
- OBEX™ is a trademark of Infrared Data Association®.



- MHL and MHL logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of MHL, LLC.
- "モバキャスト" is a registered trademark of Japan Mobilecasting, Inc.
- "NOTTV" and "NOTTV" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of mmbi, Inc.
- EPSON is a registered trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.



## ◆ Others

- Part of this product includes module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below.
  - Recording moving pictures and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)

- Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
- Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA  
For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.
- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or (ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.  
See <http://www.mpegla.com>
- This product is licensed under the VC-1 Patent Portfolio License for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the VC-1 standard (henceforth referred to as VC-1 video) and/or (ii) decode VC-1 video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide VC-1 video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.  
See <http://www.mpegla.com>

- libtiff

Copyright© 1988-1997 Sam Leffler

Copyright© 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that (i) the above copyright notices and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software and related documentation, and (ii) the names of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics may not be used in any advertising or publicity relating to the software without the specific, prior written permission of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAM LEFFLER OR SILICON GRAPHICS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER OR NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF DAMAGE, AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

- By default, the following dictionary data is installed in the built-in storage. You can download the right version of [内蔵版 (Built-in)] contents by accessing the download site from the terminal or the download site for a PC from your PC. If you download from the terminal, large amount of packet communications may take place depending on the communication environment. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended. If you download contents from your PC, copy the contents to a microSD card and insert it to the terminal.

<Iwanami Shoten>

広辞苑第六版 DVD-ROM版 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (新村出編)  
<Kenkyusha>

リーダーズ英和辞典 第3版 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (編集代表 高橋作太郎)

新和英中辞典 第5版 (Martin Collick, David P. Dutcher, 田辺宗一、金子稔編)

<Taishukan Shoten>

新漢語林MX (鎌田正、米山寅太郎著)

みんなで国語辞典② あふれる新語 (北原保雄編著 / 「もっと明鏡」委員会編集)

KY式日本語 (北原保雄編著 / 「もっと明鏡」委員会編集)

問題な日本語 (北原保雄編 (北原保雄、小林賢次、砂川有里子、鳥飼浩二、矢澤真人執筆))

築地魚河岸ことばの話 (生田與克、富岡一成著)

裁判おもしろことば学 (大河原真美著)

<Jiyu Kokuminsha>

現代用語の基礎知識2013年版 (自由国民社編)

<Shogakukan>

家庭医学館(総編集 柳下徳雄 / 服部光男 / 岡島重孝 / 小学館・家庭医学館編集委員会)

<Kadokawa Gakugei Shuppan>

角川類語新辞典(大野晋、浜西正人著)

<Sanseido>

デイリー日中英・中日英辞典 (池田巧監修 / 三省堂編修所編)  
デイリー日韓英・韓日英辞典 (福井玲・尹亨仁監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日独英・独日英辞典 (渡辺学監修 / 三省堂編修所編)  
デイリー日仏英・仏日英辞典 (村松定史監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日伊英・伊日英辞典 (藤村昌昭監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日西英・西日英辞典 (上田博人、アントニオ・ルイス・ティノコ監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日中英3か国語会話辞典 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (池田巧・胡興智監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日韓英3か国語会話辞典 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (尹亨仁監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日独英3か国語会話辞典 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (渡辺学監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日仏英3か国語会話辞典 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (村松定史監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日伊英3か国語会話辞典 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (藤村昌昭監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

デイリー日西英3か国語会話辞典 [内蔵版 (Built-in)] (山村ひろみ監修 / 三省堂編修所編)

## ◆ Open source software

- Software licensed under Apache License V2.0 and necessarily modified by us is used for this product.
- This product contains open source software complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

For details on the software license, from the Home screen,  → [Settings] → [About phone] → [Legal information] → See [Open source licenses].

For software source codes disclosed based on the open source licenses, refer to the following website. For details, refer the website below.

<http://spf.fmworld.net/fujitsu/c/develop/sp/android/> (In Japanese only)

## SIM unlock

**This terminal supports SIM unlock. If you release SIM lock, you can use SIM by a carrier other than NTT DOCOMO.**

- The SIM unlock service is provided at a docomo Shop.
- A SIM unlock charge is separately required.
- With UIM other than by DOCOMO, using the terminal in LTE system is unavailable. And available services and functions will be limited. DOCOMO is not liable to any failures or malfunctions.
- For details of SIM unlock, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

# Index

## A

<b>About phone</b> .....	148	<b>Alarmclock</b> .....	106
Android version.....	148	<b>Alert sensitivity</b> .....	123
Auth.....	148	<b>Android Beam</b> .....	157
Baseband version.....	148	<b>Android keyboard</b> .....	146
Build number.....	148	<b>APN</b> .....	114
Kernel version.....	148	<b>App battery check</b> .....	129
Legal information.....	148	<b>Application list</b> .....	49
Model number.....	148	Application info.....	51
Status.....	148	Group.....	51
<b>Access point</b> .....	114	List format.....	51
Adding.....	114	Managing.....	51
Checking.....	114	Search.....	51
Initializing.....	115	Setting for Recently.....	51
<b>Accessibility</b> .....	148	Sorting.....	51
<b>Accounts</b> .....	147	<b>Application lock</b> .....	139
Adding.....	147	<b>Apps</b> .....	130
Canceling sync.....	147	Clear cache.....	130
Manual synchronization.....	147	Clear data.....	130
Removing.....	147	Disabling.....	131
Setting.....	147	Uninstall.....	131
<b>Adapter</b> .....	6, 11, 16	<b>Area Mail</b> .....	68
<b>Advanced call settings</b> .....	58	Beep tone.....	69
<b>After returning to Japan</b> .....	169	Check screen image and beep tone.....	69
<b>After-Sales Service</b> .....	178	Deleting.....	68
<b>Air vent</b> .....	26	Displaying.....	68
<b>Airplane mode</b> .....	119	Other settings.....	69
<b>AlarmClock</b> .....	106	Receive setting.....	69
		Receiving.....	68
		Settings.....	68
		<b>Authentication information</b> .....	143
		Display.....	143
		Install.....	143
		<b>Auto-rotate screen</b> .....	126
		<b>Available service overseas</b> .....	164

**B**

<b>Battery</b>	
Battery life .....	28
Charging .....	28
Checking .....	129
<b>Battery icon</b> .....	126
<b>Before using the terminal overseas</b> .....	164
Advance preparation .....	165
After arriving overseas .....	165
Before leaving Japan .....	164
<b>Best view adjust</b> .....	144
<b>Best-fit zoom</b> .....	126
<b>Blue light cut mode</b> .....	127
<b>Bluetooth</b>	
Canceling connection .....	156
Connecting .....	155
Pair setting .....	155
Renaming .....	156
Sending/Receiving data .....	155
Unpairing .....	156
<b>Bluetooth antenna section</b> .....	25
<b>Bluetooth communication</b> .....	154
<b>Bluetooth devices</b> .....	17
<b>Bluetooth Low Energy Settings</b> .....	156
Alert Notification .....	156
Find Me Ringtone .....	156
Proximity .....	156
Time .....	156
<b>Bookmarks</b> .....	71
Deleting .....	71
Editing .....	71
Registering .....	71
<b>Brightness</b> .....	125

Automatic brightness .....	125
<b>Browser</b> .....	69
Accessibility .....	73
Advanced .....	73
Bandwidth management .....	73
Displaying web page .....	70
General .....	73
History .....	70
Incognito tab .....	70
Labs .....	73
Link operation .....	72
Operating Browser window .....	70
Prefetch Cache .....	71
Privacy & security .....	73
Save for offline reading .....	70
Save image .....	72
SAVED PAGES .....	71
Saving web page .....	70
Screen operation .....	69
Searching in dictionary .....	72
Settings .....	73

**C**

<b>Calculator</b> .....	107
<b>Calendar</b> .....	105
Checking event .....	106
Managing calendar for synchronizing/viewing .....	105
Registering event .....	106
<b>Call forwarding service</b> .....	57
<b>Call notification</b> .....	58
<b>Call waiting</b> .....	57
<b>Caller ID display request service</b> .....	58
<b>Caller ID notification</b> .....	53, 57
<b>Camera</b> .....	93



Playing back on the terminal .....	161
Playing digital recorded programs .....	161
Playing pack on DLNA device.....	160
<b>dmarket</b> .....	74
<b>dmenu</b> .....	74
<b>Dock</b> .....	47
<b>docomo backup</b> .....	108
<b>docomo mini UIM card</b> .....	6, 12, 16, 26
Installing/Removing .....	26
Security code .....	27, 133
<b>docomo mini UIM card slot</b> .....	25
<b>docomo Palette UI</b> .....	47
<b>docomo service</b> .....	131
Application manager.....	131
AUTO-GPS .....	131
Data usage check.....	131
docomo apps password.....	131
docomo location information.....	131
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection .....	131
Open source licenses .....	131
SD card backup.....	131
Send device error information .....	131
Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps .....	131
<b>Dolby Digital Plus settings</b> .....	129
<b>Dominant hand</b> .....	127
<b>Double-tap</b> .....	32
<b>Drag</b> .....	32
<b>Draining water</b> .....	23
<b>E</b>	
<b>Early warning "Area Mail"</b> .....	68
<b>Earpiece</b> .....	25
<b>Easy data transfer support</b> .....	40
Initial settings.....	39

<b>Easy Wi-Fi registration</b> .....	118, 122
AOSS system.....	118, 122
WPS system.....	118, 122
<b>eco-mode</b> .....	130
Advanced settings.....	130
Do not execute when plugged in .....	130
Eco level.....	130
Remaining battery.....	130
Timer .....	130
<b>Editing text</b> .....	38
<b>Electronic dictionary</b> .....	107, 196
<b>Email</b> .....	65
Account name .....	67
Account settings.....	65, 67
Allow auto-sync when roaming .....	67
Ask show pictures .....	66
Auto-advance .....	66
Backup.....	67
Choose ringtone.....	67
Creating.....	65
Default account .....	67
Deleting .....	66
Displaying .....	66
Download attachments.....	67
Email notifications .....	67
Forwarding .....	66
General settings .....	66
Inbox check frequency .....	67
Incoming settings.....	67
Message text size .....	66
Number of days to sync calendar .....	67
Number of days to sync email .....	67
Outgoing settings.....	67
Quick responses .....	67





<b>Local</b> .....	105	<b>Format</b> .....	129
<b>Location information</b> .....	102	<b>Installing</b> .....	150
<b>Lock screen</b> .....	44	<b>Media device (MTP)</b> .....	158
Lock screen wallpaper .....	135	<b>Operation from a PC</b> .....	158
Owner info .....	135	<b>Removing</b> .....	150
Screen .....	134	<b>microSD card slot</b> .....	25
Widget .....	45	<b>microSD password</b> .....	133
<b>Long-play mode</b> .....	128	<b>Miracast</b> .....	163
<b>M</b>			
<b>Mail</b> .....	63, 65, 68	<b>Missed call LED</b> .....	124
<b>Making/Receiving a call in the country you stay</b> .....	167	<b>Mobacas</b> .....	80, 82
Making a call .....	167	Searching programs/contents .....	82
Making a call to outside country you stay (including		Settings .....	84
Japan) .....	167	<b>Mobacas settings</b>	
Receiving a call .....	167	Acquire program/content information .....	84
<b>Manner mode</b> .....	123	Audio .....	84
Manner mode .....	123	Auto contents complement for Shift Time .....	84
Manner mode (Alarm) .....	123	Auto license acquisition .....	85
Manner mode (Silent) .....	123	Automatic schedule for Shift Time .....	84
Original manner .....	123	Background play .....	84
<b>Maps</b> .....	103	Cancel Twitter link .....	85
<b>Material</b> .....	13	Change model .....	85
<b>Media Player</b> .....	100	Character code conversion .....	85
Help .....	101	Clear Cookie .....	85
Playing music/video .....	101	Cookie .....	85
Purchasing from dmarket .....	101	Delete broadcast saving area .....	85
<b>Messaging</b> .....	63	Display data broadcasting .....	85
<b>MHL</b> .....	162	Display on-air programs .....	85
<b>MIC input</b> .....	124	Display subtitle .....	84
<b>Microphone</b> .....	25	History .....	85
<b>microSD card</b> .....	149	Parental control .....	85
Camera (MTP) .....	158	Prevent duplicative recording .....	85
Erasing data .....	129	Reload .....	85
		Reset recommendation .....	84
		Select storage .....	85

Send log .....	85
Telop display.....	84
<b>mopera U</b> .....	115
<b>Multimedia</b> .....	128
<b>My physical profile</b> .....	144
User information .....	144
<b>My profile</b> .....	62

## N

<b>Name card creator</b> .....	62
<b>Navigation bar</b> .....	41, 126
<b>Network Mode</b> .....	166
<b>Network operators</b> .....	166
<b>Network security code</b> .....	132
<b>Network service</b> .....	57
<b>Network service (overseas)</b> .....	169
<b>New APN</b> .....	114
<b>NFC communication</b> .....	157
<b>NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock</b> .....	78
<b>Notification panel</b> .....	43
Setting switch .....	44
<b>Notification sound</b> .....	124
<b>NOTTV</b> .....	80, 82
<b>Nuisance call blocking service</b> .....	57
<b>Numeric keypad input</b> .....	36
<b>NX! eco</b> .....	130
eco-mode .....	130
<b>NX!input &amp; ATOK Settings</b> .....	37
Conversion setting .....	38
Design.....	38
Handwritten input setting .....	37
Initialize .....	38
Numeric keypad settings .....	37
Operation sound/Vibrate.....	37

<b>QWERTY keypad settings</b> .....	37
<b>Set selection list</b> .....	38
<b>Utility</b> .....	38

## O

<b>On-hold</b> .....	55
<b>Open source software</b> .....	197
<b>Optional and related devices</b> .....	170
<b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> .....	76
Precautions on using .....	76
<b>Osaifu-Keitai Lock Setting</b> .....	78
<b>Osaifu-Keitai service</b> .....	76, 77
<b>Out-camera</b> .....	25

## P

<b>Packet connection</b> .....	122
<b>Pan</b> .....	32
<b>Password</b> .....	135
<b>Password manager</b> .....	140
Deleting password .....	140
Editing password .....	140
<b>Pattern</b> .....	135
<b>Pause</b> .....	53
<b>Personal dictionary</b> .....	38, 146
Language .....	146
Phrase .....	146
Shortcut .....	146
<b>Phone</b>	
Add wait.....	53
Add 2-sec pause .....	53
Call settings .....	57
Call volume.....	55
Emergency call .....	54
Making a call.....	53

Receiving a call .....	55	Disabling .....	134
Speaker phone .....	56	Input .....	134
<b>Phone memo</b> .....	57	Setting .....	133
Enabling Phone memo.....	57	<b>Pinch</b> .....	32
Phone memo list.....	57	<b>Play Store</b> .....	74
Recording .....	55	Deleting application .....	76
Set answer time.....	57	Help of Google Play .....	76
Set reply message.....	57	Installing application.....	75
<b>Phone ringtone</b> .....	124	<b>Playing video</b> .....	99
<b>Phonebook</b> .....	59	<b>Power key</b> .....	26
Canceling group .....	60	<b>Precautions</b> .....	5
Communication .....	60	<b>Pre-installed applications</b> .....	49
Creating group .....	60	<b>Privacy mode</b> .....	140
Deleting .....	60	Action for app notifications.....	142
Deleting group .....	60	Action when call received .....	141
Editing .....	59	Action when mail received.....	141
Editing group name.....	60	Activate/Deactivate options.....	142
Export to SD card .....	61	Activating.....	142
Exporting.....	61	Browser .....	142
Favorites.....	61	Browser setting .....	142
Import from SD card .....	61	Deactivating.....	142
Importing.....	61	Dictionary for predictive text input.....	142
Index .....	59	Home .....	142
Phonebook list .....	59	Home setting .....	142
Profile screen .....	61	Phonebook setting .....	141
Registered personal information .....	61	Phonebook/History.....	141
Registering group.....	60	Picture .....	142
Registration .....	59	Picture setting .....	142
Search.....	59	Receive indicator.....	142
Share phonebook data.....	61	Setting .....	141
Timeline.....	60	<b>Privacy view</b> .....	126
<b>Picture correction</b> .....	128	<b>Proximity sensor</b> .....	25
<b>PIN code</b> .....	133	<b>Public mode (Drive mode)</b> .....	58
Changing .....	134	<b>Public mode (power OFF) settings</b> .....	58

PUK code..... 133

## Q

QR code reader.....98  
History.....99  
Light.....99  
Reading.....98  
Quick reply.....55

## R

Real Time (broadcasting in real time style).....80  
Recent calls.....56  
Recommended applications.....52  
Switching.....49  
Registering words.....146  
Reject SMS.....58  
Remote operation settings.....58  
Reserving watching/recording for Real Time.....84  
Reset.....178  
Reverb suppression.....58  
RGB sensor.....25  
Roaming settings.....168

## S

SAR.....188  
Scheduling Shift Time reception.....83  
Screen.....41  
Screen lock.....134  
Automatically lock.....136  
Lock.....134  
Unlock.....134  
Screen lock sound.....124  
Screenshot.....34

SD card backup.....108  
Backup.....109  
Phonebook account copy.....109  
Restore.....109  
SD card password settings.....144  
Authenticate password.....144  
Change password.....144  
Delete password.....144  
Forcibly delete password.....144  
Registering password.....144  
Search.....108  
Search settings.....108  
Phone search.....108  
Privacy and accounts.....108  
Voice.....108  
Second call settings.....58  
Security code.....135  
Security lock.....135  
Security unlock preference.....135  
Initial settings.....39  
Select lock.....134  
Initial settings.....39  
Select prefix.....53  
Set up SIM/RUIM card lock.....133  
Setting international roaming.....168  
Settings for making/receiving calls overseas.....168  
Setting menu.....110  
Settings for overseas use.....166  
Shake to unrotate.....127  
Shift Time (broadcasting in storage style).....80  
Shooting function for camera (still image).....96  
Adjust flicker.....96  
Auto focus.....96  
Automatic exposure.....96

Scene mode .....	96	Backup.....	64
Touch focus.....	96	Creating.....	63
White balance .....	96	Deleting.....	64
<b>Shooting function for camera (video)</b> .....	98	Deleting old messages .....	64
Auto focus.....	98	Delivery reports.....	64
Touch focus.....	98	Displaying.....	63
White balance .....	98	Forwarding .....	64
<b>Shooting settings for camera (still image)</b> .....	96	LED .....	64
Camera Mode .....	96	Manage SIM card messages .....	64
Flash .....	97	Message center number.....	64
HDR mode.....	97	Message limit .....	64
Location.....	97	Notifications .....	64
Picture Size.....	96	Receiving .....	63
Save.....	97	Replying .....	64
Self Timer.....	97	Sending.....	63
Switch camera .....	96	Setting.....	64
Touch shutter.....	97	Sound.....	64
<b>Shooting settings for camera (video)</b> .....	98	Vibrate.....	64
Camera Mode .....	98	<b>Software update</b> .....	180
Light.....	98	Automatic Update .....	181
Picture Size.....	98	Now update .....	182
Save.....	98	Reserved update .....	183
Switch camera .....	98	<b>Sound &amp; Vibration settings</b> .....	122
WDR mode .....	98	<b>Speaker</b> .....	25
<b>SIM unlock</b> .....	197	<b>Specifications</b> .....	186
<b>Sleep</b> .....	125	<b>sp-mode</b> .....	115
<b>Sleep mode</b> .....	44	<b>Status bar</b> .....	42
<b>Slide</b> .....	32	<b>Step/Activity counter app</b> .....	144
<b>Slide display</b> .....	41, 126	<b>Stereo earphone jack</b> .....	25
<b>Slide-in function</b> .....	145	<b>Still image shooting screen</b> .....	94
Initial settings.....	39	<b>Storage</b> .....	129, 149
<b>Slide-in launcher</b> .....	45	<b>Strap hole</b> .....	25
<b>Smartphone Anshin Remote Support</b> .....	177	<b>Super clear mode</b> .....	125
<b>SMS</b> .....	63	<b>Swipe</b> .....	32

Switching input method .....37

## T

Talk .....	69
Tap .....	32
Task manager .....	46
Temperature/Humidity sensor .....	25
Tethering .....	120
Easy registration .....	122
Text-to-speech .....	147
Theater mode .....	30, 125
Time .....	147
ToruCa .....	79
Touch and hold .....	32
Touch panel .....	25
Notes for using .....	32
Using .....	31
Touch sounds .....	124
Touch-tone signals .....	56
Trademarks .....	193
Troubleshooting .....	170
Turn off sound when flipped .....	124
Turning power ON/OFF .....	31
Turning OFF .....	31
Turning ON .....	31
TV .....	85
Activating .....	86
End .....	88
Playing recorded programs .....	90
Recording .....	89
Reserving recording .....	88
Reserving watching .....	88
Set image/audio/subtitle .....	91
Setting .....	91

Signal .....	86
Switch sound-multicomplex .....	91
Switch subtitle .....	91
Twitter .....	88
Using TV .....	86
TV antenna .....	25, 81
TV link .....	88
Deleting .....	88
Displaying .....	88
Registering .....	88
TV settings .....	
Alarm setting .....	91
Data broadcasting setting .....	91
Display information when playing .....	91
Initialize CAS information .....	91
Long time mode .....	91
Off-timer setting .....	91
Product information .....	91
Smooth mode .....	91
Subtitle setting .....	91
Twitter setting .....	91
TV/FM transmitter antenna .....	25

## U

Uninstalling .....	
Application list .....	51
Home screen .....	48
Unknown sources .....	143
Upgrade Android software .....	184
USB mass storage .....	162
USB tethering .....	121
Use Internet calling .....	58

**V**

<b>Vibrate when ringing</b> .....	124
<b>Vibrate when touch</b> .....	124
<b>Video correction</b> .....	128
<b>Video shooting screen</b> .....	94
<b>Viewing still image</b> .....	99
<b>Virtual Private Network</b> .....	120
<b>Voice adjust</b> .....	56, 144
<b>Voice adjusting</b> .....	56
<b>Voice clear</b> .....	55
<b>Voice input</b> .....	35
<b>Voice mail service</b> .....	57
<b>Voice Search</b> .....	108, 146
Block offensive words .....	146
Download offline speech recognition .....	146
Language .....	146
Speech output .....	146
<b>Voice slowing</b> .....	56
<b>Volume key</b> .....	26
<b>Volumes</b> .....	122
<b>VPN</b> .....	120
Adding .....	120
Connection .....	120
Disconnecting .....	120

**W**

<b>Warranty</b> .....	178
<b>Waterproofness/Dustproofness</b> .....	20
<b>Wi-Fi</b> .....	116
Adding .....	117
Advanced settings .....	118
auto-IP setting .....	118
Avoid poor connections .....	118

Disconnecting .....	117
Easy registration .....	118
IP address .....	118
MAC address .....	118
Network notification .....	118
Scan .....	116
Wi-Fi Auto ON/OFF .....	118
Wi-Fi frequency band .....	118
Wi-Fi optimization .....	118
Wi-Fi sleep policy .....	118
<b>Wi-Fi antenna section</b> .....	25
<b>Wi-Fi Direct</b> .....	117
<b>Wi-Fi tethering</b> .....	121
<b>Wireless LAN (WLAN)</b> .....	18
<b>WIRELESS &amp; NETWORKS</b> .....	114
<b>WORLD WING</b> .....	164

**X**

<b>Xi antenna section</b> .....	26
---------------------------------	----

**Y**

<b>YouTube</b> .....	101
----------------------	-----

**Numeric**

<b>1Seg</b> .....	85
<b>2-touch input</b> .....	37

Please ask checking/changing subscription detail, application of various services and request of various information materials online.

**From sp-mode** dmenu⇒"お客様サポート (Customer support)"⇒"各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)" (Packet communication free) (in Japanese only)

**From PCs** My docomo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures) (in Japanese only)

- \* You need "Network security code" to access the site from sp-mode
- \* Some services may be charged when accessing from sp-mode
- \* You need "docomo ID/Password" to access the site from your PC.
- \* If you do not have or forget " Network security code" or "docomo ID/Password", contact to the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.
- \* You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
- \* These are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

## Use mobile phone with your manners!

### Always turn OFF your terminal in cases below

- In a place where use of mobile phone is prohibited  
Follow the instructions of each airline or medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises. Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited.

### Always set Public mode in cases below

- When driving  
Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to penal regulations. However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.
- In public places such as a theater, movie theater or art museum  
Using your terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

## Match the volume of voice and ring alert to your location

- In a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice etc. when using your terminal.
- In town areas, while using your terminal, be sure not to block foot or car traffic.

### Consider privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Functions designed for public use

Your terminal has a number of useful functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

### ● Public mode (Power OFF)→P57

The caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is in a place requiring power-off of mobile phone, and the call is disconnected.

### ● Vibrate→P124

Vibrates when there is an incoming call.

### ● Manner mode→P123

Eliminates all sounds your terminal makes, such as ring alert and keypad/touch sound (Shutter sound cannot be eliminated).

And you can use optional services such as Voice mail Service, Call Forwarding Service , etc. →P57

## For loss, theft, malfunction, and inquiries while overseas (24-hour reception)

### ● From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code  
for the country you stay

**-81-3-6832-6600\* (toll free)**

\* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※ If you use F-06E, you should dial the number +81-3-6832-6600 (to enter '+', touch and hold the '0' key).

### ● From land-line phones <Universal number>

Universal number  
international prefix

**-8000120-0151\***

\* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※ For international call access codes for major countries and universal number international prefix, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

● If you lose your terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the terminal.

● If the terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.



We collect old phones, etc. regardless of brands and manufacturers. Bring them to your nearest docomo Shop.

\*Items to be collected: mobile phones, PHS, battery packs, chargers, desktop holders (regardless of brands and manufacturers)

**General Inquiries**  
**<docomo Information Center>**

 **0120-005-250 (toll free)**

- \* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish
- \* Unavailable from part of IP phones.

**(Business hours : 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.)**

 **From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)**

 **(No prefix) 151 (toll free)**

- \* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

 **From land-line phones (In Japanese only)**

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

- \* Unavailable from part of IP phones.

**(Business hours : 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round))**

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo Shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website.

NTT DOCOMO website <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/>

**Repairs**

 **From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)**

 **(No prefix) 113 (toll free)**

- \* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

 **From land-line phones (In Japanese only)**

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

- \* Unavailable from part of IP phones.

**(Business hours : 24 hours (open all year round))**



Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!  
When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to  
show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.



Li-ion 00

**Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.**  
**Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED**

2013.6 (1st Edition)  
CA92002-8365